

Jordanes

GETICA

sive

De Origine Actibusque Gothorum

Although Jordanes tells us (# 266) that he is of Gothic descent and may indeed be partly or even fully a Goth, his name itself is not Germanic. He explains toward the end of chapter 49 that his grandfather was called Farja and his father Wiha-moð, both Gothic names, and that his grandfather had been secretary to the Alan leader Candac and he himself secretary to the Ostrogothic chieftain Gunþi-gis before his "conversion" (perhaps from Arianism to Catholicism). The name of one Jordanes Crotonensis, bishop of Crotona (now Crotone) in Bruttium (southern Italy) is found, with those of several other bishops, appended to a document sometimes called the *Damnatio Theodori*, issued by pope Vigilius in August 551 at Constantinople. Jordanes' history of the Goths (also called the *Getica*) includes in part a summation of a 12-volume history by Senator Cassiodorus, "*On the Origin and Deeds of the Goths from Long Ago and Descending through Generations and Kings to Now.*" Even if not a bishop, Jordanes was at least a monk or similar ecclesiastic, and wrote his own work in Constantinople in A.D. 551 under Emperor Justinian of Byzantium (527-565), during which time Pope Vigilius himself happened to be in Constantinople by order of the Emperor. Jordanes dedicated his work to another man of religion, an otherwise unknown "brother Castalius" (or "Castulus"). To judge from his extremely negative attitude toward Arian Christianity (a heresy started by a priest named Arius), it is very likely that Jordanes had himself once been an Arian like most of the Goths, and that he had later converted to Catholicism.

The *Getica* was written after beginning and before finishing a similar work on Roman history, the *Romana*, dedicated to a certain "most noble brother Vigilius" (probably not the pope of that name). By 551 the Gothic kingdom established by Theodoric (Þiuda-reik) had been destroyed, and the Western Roman Empire was disintegrating rapidly. The main aim of both treatises was to show how even the greatest structures of human power on this earth - whether Gothic or Roman -

are transient and deceptive, and that man can find lasting peace in God alone.

I have also translated and included the final sections of Jordanes' *Romana* (## 367-388), portions which treat of Emperor Justinian's war against the Goths in Italy and which both supplement and recapitulate some of the material found in the *Getica*.

Senator Cassiodorus very likely destroyed his own 12-volume work because it had been written during the reign of Theodoric (493-526) and had treated the Goths very favorably, but shortly after Theodoric's death the political climate had changed and Cassiodorus, formerly Theodoric's Chief of Staff, now found himself in Constantinople, the seat of anti-Gothic sentiment. To avoid being seen as an enemy of the Empire, he therefore probably eliminated any traces of his former allegiance, which included his volumes on the Goths. Jordanes was in fact able to read the work only through the good graces of Cassiodorus' steward, not Cassiodorus himself. Of this, James J. O'Donnell, in his web-published "*The Aims of Jordanes*," observes that Jordanes "has only managed to lay his hands on the twelve books of Cassiodorus for three days and now must write from memory. The plain sense of the business about the steward is that Cassiodorus was not inclined to cooperate with such a project at this time and that it was carried out without his knowledge."

Jordanes' work, which may be seen as a kind of obituary of the Gothic nation, contains a number of elements surprising and interesting to the modern reader. Besides its extensive portrayals of Attila the Hun and his battles (especially the historic battle of the Catalaunian Fields), it includes (Second Half, sections 237/8) one of the earliest references to the original "King Arthur," known here as "Riotimus" (from Celtic *Rigotamus "King-most," "Supreme king," later literarily confused with a Latin name, Artorius). Likewise, many of the events and *dramatis personae* sung about in the epic lays and sagas of the later Germanic north are described here as they originally happened. Above all, the ceaseless battles and unending bloodshed described here give us some idea of just what the decline of a civilization entails.

To follow the wanderings and adventures of the Goths, the best available atlas is the *Barrington Atlas of the Greek and Roman World*, edited by Richard J.A. Talbert (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2000). This excellent volume is based on work by many scholars using both archeology and satellite-generated aeronautical charts to depict the ancient landscape as it was in the days of the Roman Empire, and is an immense help in understanding the topography of Europe traversed by the Goths.

The *Getica* contains four main divisions: 1) a Geographical Introduction; 2) the United Goths; 3) the Visigoths; 4) the Ostrogoths. These sections are interspersed with sundry digressions of various sorts.

The following texts are as follows:

The Latin is based on that of Theodore Mommsen, *Monumenta Germaniae Historica*, which I have modified extensively for easier reading, since Jordanes' own text is anything but "classical" in form. Many of the changes I have made in case endings are taken from the source Mommsen designates as "A," meaning a codex of the 11th/12th century from the Ambrosian library in Milan, Italy. ("A" contains a number of other histories besides Jordanes, and it "corrects" many of the grammatical mistakes of the original from which it was copied.) Other changes are my own, such as substituting, in the interest of clarity in an often unclear Latin text, the form quum for the conjunction cum to distinguish it from the preposition cum. Likewise I have substituted the letter "J" for consonantal "I."

The English is, with some exceptions, mainly that of Charles Christopher Mierow, Ph.D., 1915, altered in particular with respect to Germanic and especially Gothic names, all of which I have normally presented in modified Visigothic format (e.g., ð for the voiced labiodental fricative instead of Biblical Visigothic *d*, *-ing-* for *-igg-*) for the sake of consistency. Also helpful in many instances was the sometimes more literal German translation by Dr. Wilhelm Martens, *Jordanis Gotengeschichte, nebst Auszügen aus seiner Römischen Geschichte*, herausgegeben von Alexander Heine, 1914, now available from the Phaidon Verlag in Essen, Germany. Other modifications will be obvious to the reader.

This HTML edition is made not for scholars but for the general reader interested in European and Germanic history. It is, accordingly, not a "diplomatic" text (for which, see Mommsen) as found in the manuscripts, but, as already mentioned, a largely "emended" and "normalized" one, with misspellings corrected, missing case endings resupplied, etc.

Ancient letters:

- Þ (lower case: þ) "Thorn," is pronounced like the "th" in "with";
- Ð (lower case: ð) "Edh," is pronounced like the "th" in "there."

Included are Mommsen's sentence (Arabic) and chapter (Roman) numbers for reference purposes.

NOTE: Jordanes plagiarized the first sentences of his *Getica* from the preface of Tyrannius Rufinus of Aquileja to a translation of Origen's commentary on Romans. The plagiarized parts are here *italicized*.

DE ORIGINE ACTIBUSQUE GETARUM	THE ORIGIN AND DEEDS OF THE GOTHS
1	
<i>Volentem me parvo subvectum navigio oram tranquilli litoris stringere et minutos de priscorum, ut quidam ait, stagnis pisciculos legere, in altum, frater Castali, laxare vela compellis, relictoque opusculo, quod inter manus habeo, id est, de abbreviatione Chronicorum, suades, ut nostris verbis duodecim {Cassiodori} Senatoris volumina de origine actibusque Getarum ab olim et usque nunc per generationes regesque descendencia in unum et hunc parvum libellum coartem.</i>	<i>Though it had been my wish to glide in my little boat by the shore of a peaceful coast and (as someone once said) to gather little fishes from the pools of the ancients, you, brother Castalius, bid me set my sails toward the deep. You urge me to leave the little work I have in hand, that is, an abridged version of the Chronicles, and to condense in my own words in this small book the twelve volumes of the Senator {Cassiodorus} on the origin and deeds of the Goths from olden time all the way to the present, descending through the generations of the kings.</i>
2	
<i>Dura satis imperia et tanquam ab eo, qui pondus operis hujus scire nollit, imposita. Nec illud aspicias, quod tenuis mihi est spiritus ad implendam ejus tam magnificam dicendi tubam: super omne autem pondus, quod nec facultas eorundem librorum nobis datur, quatenus ejus sensui inserviamus, sed - ut non mentiar - ad triduanam lectionem, dispensatoris ejus beneficio, libros ipsos antehac relegi. Quorum quamvis verba non recorder, sensus tamen et res actas credo me integre retinere.</i>	<i>Truly a hard command, and imposed by one who seems unwilling to realize the burden of the task. Nor do you note this, that my breath is too slight to fill so magnificent a trumpet of speech as his. But above every burden is the fact that I have no access to his books that I may follow his thought. Still - and let me lie not - some while ago I read the books a second time by his steward's loan for a three days' reading. The words I recall not, but the sense and the deeds related I think I retain entire.</i>
3	
<i>Ad quos et ex nonnullis historiis Graecis ac Latinis addidi convenientia, initium finemque et plura in medio mea dictione permiscens.</i>	<i>To this I have added fitting matters from some Greek and Latin histories. I have also put in an introduction and a conclusion, and have inserted many things of my own authorship.</i>
<i>Quare sine contumelia quod exegisti suscipe libens, libentissime lege; et si quid</i>	<i>Wherefore reproach me not, but receive and read with gladness what you have asked me</i>

parum dictum est et tu, ut vicinus genti, commemoras, adde, orans pro me, frater carissime. Dominus tecum. Amen.	to write. If ought be insufficiently spoken and you remember it, do you as a neighbor to our race add to it, praying for me, dearest brother. The Lord be with you. Amen.
<p style="text-align: center;">I (Geographical Introduction) 4</p>	
Majores nostri, ut refert Orosius, totius terrae circum Oceanum limbo circumsaepum triquetrum statuerunt, ejusque tres partes Asiam, Europam et Africam vocaverunt, de quo tripertito orbis terrarum spatio innumerabiles paene scriptores existunt, qui non solum urbium locorumque positiones explanant, verum etiam et quod est liquidius, passuum milliariumque dimetiuntur quantitatem, insulas quoque, marinis fluctibus intermixtas, tam majores quam etiam minores, quas Cycladas vel Sporadas cognominant, in immenso maris magni pelago sitas determinant.	Our ancestors, as Orosius relates, were of the opinion that the circle of the whole world was surrounded by the girdle of Ocean on three sides. Its three parts they called Asia, Europe and Africa. Concerning this threefold division of the earth's extent there are almost innumerable writers, who not only explain the situations of cities and places, but also measure out the number of miles and paces to give more clearness. Moreover they locate the islands interspersed amid the waves, both the greater and also the lesser islands, called Cyclades or Sporades, as situated in the vast flood of the Great Sea.
<p style="text-align: center;">5</p>	
Oceani vero intransmeabiles ultiores fines non solum quis describere aggressus non est, verum etiam nec cuiquam licuit transfretare, quia, resistente ulva, et ventorum spiramine quiescente, impermeabilis esse sentitur et nulli cognita nisi Ei Qui eam constituit.	But the impassable farther bounds of Ocean not only has no one attempted to describe, but no man has been allowed to reach; for by reason of obstructing seaweed and the failing of the winds it is plainly inaccessible and is unknown to any save to Him who made it.
<p style="text-align: center;">6</p>	
Citerior vero ejus pelagi ripa, quam diximus totius mundi circum, in modum coronae ambiens fines ejus, curiosis hominibus et qui de hac re scribere voluerunt perquam innotuit, quia et terrae circulus ab incolis possidetur et nonnullae insulae in eodem mare habitabiles sunt, ut in orientali plaga et Indico Oceano Hippodes, Iamnesia, Sole Perusta (quamvis inhabitabilis, tamen omnino sui spatio in longo latoque	But the nearer border of this sea, which we call the circle of the world, surrounds its coasts like a wreath. This has become clearly known to men of inquiring mind everywhere, even to such as desired to write about it. For not only is the coast itself inhabited, but certain islands off in the sea are habitable. Thus there are to the East in the Indian Ocean, Hippodes, Iamnesia, Sole Perusta {"Sunbake"} (which though not habitable, is yet of great length and breadth)

extensa); Taprobane quoque, exceptis oppidis vel possessionibus, decem munitissimis urbibus decora; sed et aliae omnino nominatissimae, Silefantina; nec non et Theron;	and also Taprobane {Sri Lanka}, a fair island adorned with ten strongly fortified cities, not counting the towns or estates. But there is yet another, the very famous Silefantina, and Theros also.
7	
licet non ab aliquo scriptore dilucidae, tamen suis possessoribus affatim refertae.	These, though not celebrated by any writer, are nevertheless well filled with inhabitants.
Habet in parte occidua idem Oceanus aliquantas insulas et paene cunctis ob frequentiam euntium et redeuntium notas.	This same Ocean has in its western region certain islands known to almost everyone by reason of the great number of those that journey to and fro.
Et sunt juxta fretum Gaditanum haud procul una, Beata, et alia quae dicitur Fortunata.	And there are two not far from the neighborhood of the Strait of Gades, one the Blessed Isle and another called the Fortunate.
Quamvis nonnulli et illa gemina Gallaeciae et Lusitaniae promuntoria inter Oceani insulas ponant, in quorum uno Templum Herculis, in alio Monumentum adhuc conspicitur Scipionis, tamen, quia extremitatem Gallaeciae terrae continent, ad terram magnam Europae potius quam ad Oceani pertinent insulas.	Although some reckon as islands of Ocean the twin promontories of Gallaecia and Lusitania, where are still to be seen the Temple of Hercules on one and Scipio's Monument on the other, yet since they are joined to the extremity of the Galician country, they belong rather to the great land of Europe than to the islands of Ocean.
8	
Habet tamen et alias insulas interius in suo aestu, quae dicuntur Baleares, habetque et aliam Menaviam, nec non Orcadas numero XXXIII {triginta tres} quamvis non omnes excultas.	However, it has other islands deeper within its own tides, which are called the Baleares; and yet another, Menavia {the Isle of Man in the Irish Sea}, as well as the Orcades {the Orkneys}, thirty-three in number, though not all inhabited.
9	
Habet et in ultimo <fine> plagae occidentalis aliam insulam nomine Thule, de qua Mantuanus inter alia: "tibi serviat ultima Thule." [Vergilius, Georgica 1,30] Habet quoque id ipsum immensum	And at the farthest bound of its western expanse it has another Island named Thule {Mainland, the largest of the Shetland Islands north of Britain}, of which the Mantuan bard makes mention: "And Farthest Thule shall serve thee."

<p>pelagus in parte arctoa, id est septentrionali, amplam insulam nomine Scandiam, unde Nobis sermo, si Dominus jubaverit, est assumendus; quia gens, cujus originem flagitas, ab hujus insulae gremio velut examen apium erumpens in terram Europae advenit; quomodo vero aut qualiter, in subsequentibus, si Dominus donaverit, explanabimus.</p>	<p>[Virgil, Georgics 1,30]</p> <p>The same mighty sea has also in its Arctic region, that is in the north, a great island named Scandia, from which my tale (by God's grace) shall take its beginning. For the race whose origin you ask to know burst forth like a swarm of bees from the midst of this island and came into the land of Europe. But how or in what wise we shall explain hereafter, if it be the Lord's will.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">II</p> <hr style="width: 10%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">10</p>	
<p>Nunc autem de Brittania insula, quae in sino Oceani inter Hispanias, Gallias et Germaniam sita est, ut potuero, paucis absolvam.</p>	<p>But now let me speak briefly as I can concerning the island of Britain, which is situated in the bosom of Ocean between Spain, Gaul and Germany.</p>
<p>Cujus licet magnitudinem olim nemo, ut refert Livius, circumvectus est, multis tamen data est varia opinio de ea loquendi.</p>	<p>Although Livy tells us that no one in former days sailed around it because of its great size, yet many writers have held various opinions of it.</p>
<p>Quam, diu si quidem armis inaccessam, Romanis Julius Caesar proeliis ad gloriam tantum quaesitis aperuit; pervia deinceps mercimoniis aliasque ob causas multis facta mortalibus, non indiligenti quae secuta est aetati certius sui prodidit situm - quem, ut a Graecis Latinisque autoribus accepimus, persequimur.</p>	<p>It was long unapproached by Roman arms, until Julius Caesar opened it up by battles fought for mere glory. Having been made accessible from then on to many people for trade and other purposes, it more clearly revealed its position to the busy period which followed - a position I shall here explain as I have found it in Greek and Latin authors.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">11</p>	
<p>Triquetram eam plures dixere consimilem, inter septentrionalem occidentalemque plagam projectam: uno, qui magnus est, angulo Rheni ostia spectantem; dehinc, correpta latitudine, oblique retro abstractam in duos exire alios; geminoque latere longiorem Galliae praetendi atque Germaniae.</p>	<p>Most of them have said it is like a triangle pointing between the north and west. Its widest angle faces the mouths of the Rhine. Then, shrinking in breadth, the land recedes diagonally until it ends in two other angles. Its longer, doubled-sided face fronts on Gaul and Germany.</p>
<p>In duobus milibus trecentis decem { =</p>	<p>Its greatest breadth is said to be over two thousand three hundred and ten stadia, and</p>

2,310} stadiis latitudo ejus ubi patentior, longitudo non ultra septem milia centum triginta duo {= 7,132} stadia fertur extendi;	its length not more than seven thousand one hundred and thirty-two stadia.
12	
modo vero dumosa, modo silvestri jacere planitie, montibus etiam nonnullis increscere; mari tardo circumflua, quod nec remis impellentibus facile cedat, nec ventorum flatibus intumescat - credo, quia remotae longius terrae causas motibus negant; quippe illic latius quam usquam aequor extenditur.	In some parts it lies fallow with briar thickets, in others with woods, and sometimes it rises into mountain peaks. The island is surrounded by a sluggish sea, which neither gives readily to the stroke of the oar nor runs high under the blasts of the wind. I suppose this is because other lands are so far removed from it as to cause no disturbance of the sea, which indeed is of greater width here than anywhere else.
Refert autem Strabo Graecorum nobilis scriptor tantas illam exhalare nebulas, madefacta humo Oceani crebris excursibus, ut subtectus sol per illum paene totum foediorum - qui "serenus" est - diem negetur aspectui.	Moreover Strabo, a famous writer of the Greeks, relates that the island exhales such mists from its soil, soaked by the frequent inroads of Ocean, that the sun is covered throughout the whole of their miserable sort of day that passes as fair, and so is hidden from sight.
13	
Noctem quoque clariorem in extrema ejus parte minimamque, Cornelius etiam annalium scriptor enarrat; metallis plurimis copiosam, herbis frequentem et his feraciorem omnibus quae pecora magis quam homines alant; labi vero per eam multa quam maxima relabique flumina, gemmas margaritasque volventia.	Cornelius also, the author of the Annals, says that in the farthest part of Britain the night gets brighter and is very short. He also says that the island abounds in metals, is well supplied with grass and is more productive in all those things which feed beasts rather than men. Moreover many large rivers flow back and forth through it, rolling along precious stones and pearls.
Silurum colorati vultus; torto plerique crine et nigro nascuntur; Caledoniam vero incolentibus rutilae comae, corpora magna, sed fluvida: Gallis sive Hispanis, ut quibusque obtenduntur, assimiles.	The Silures have swarthy features and are usually born with curly black hair, but the inhabitants of Caledonia {= the Scottish Highlands} have reddish hair and large loose-jointed bodies. They are like the Gauls or the Spaniards, according as they are opposite either nation.
14	
Unde conjectavere nonnulli, quod ea	Hence some have supposed that from these

<insula> ex his accolas contiguo vocatos acceperit.	lands the island received its inhabitants, alluring them by its nearness.
Inculti aequae omnes populi regesque populorum; cunctis tamen in Caledoniorum Maeatarumque cessisse nomina Dio auctor est, celeberrimus scriptor annalium.	All the people and their kings are alike wild. Yet Dio, a most celebrated writer of annals, assures us of the fact that they have all been combined under the name of Caledonians and Maeatae.
Virgeas habitant casas, communia tecta cum pecore, silvaeque illis saepe sunt domus.	They live in wattled huts, a shelter used in common with their flocks, and often the woods are their home.
Ob decorem nescio an aliam quam ob rem ferro pingunt corpora.	They tattoo their bodies with iron-red, whether by way of adornment or perhaps for some other reason.
15	
Bellum inter se aut imperii cupidine, aut amplificandi quae possident, saepius gerunt, non tantum equitatu vel pedite, verum etiam bigis curribusque falcatis, quos more vulgari " <i>essedas</i> " vocant.	They often wage war with one another, either because they desire power or to increase their possessions. They fight not only on horse back or on foot, but even with scythed two-horse chariots, which they commonly call " <i>essedae</i> ."
Haec pauca de Britanniae insulae forma dixisse sufficiat.	Let it suffice to have said thus much on the shape of the island of Britain.
<div>III</div> 16	
Ad Scandiae insulae situm, quod superius {I, 9} reliquimus, redeamus.	Let us now return to the site of the island of Scandia, which we left above {I, 9}.
De hac etenim in secundo sui operis libro Claudius Ptolomaeus, orbis terrae discriptor egregius, meminit dicens: "Est in Oceani arctoi salo posita insula magna, nomine Scandia, in modum folii citri, lateribus pandis, per longum ducta concludens se."	Claudius Ptolemaeus, an excellent describer of the world, has made mention of it in the second book of his work, saying: "There is a great island situated in the surge of the northern Ocean, Scandia by name, in the shape of a citron leaf, with bulging sides that taper down to a point at a long end."
De qua et Pomponius Mela in maris sinu Codano positam refert, cujus ripas influit Oceanus.	Pomponius Mela also makes mention of it as situated in the Codan Gulf {= one of the gulfs and bays around the Jutland peninsula (the Kattegat?)} of the sea, with Ocean lapping its shores.
17	

Haec a fronte posita est Vistulae fluminis, quod, Sarmaticis montibus ortum, in conspectu Scandiae septentrionali Oceano trisulcum illabitur, Germaniam Scythiamque disternans.	This island lies opposite the river Vistula, which rises in the Sarmatian mountains and flows through its triple mouth into the northern Ocean in sight of Scandia, separating Germany and Scythia.
Haec ergo habet ab oriente vastissimum lacum in orbis terrae gremio, unde Vagi fluvius velut quodam ventre generatus in Oceanum undosus evolvitur.	The island has in its eastern part a vast lake in the bosom of the earth, whence the Vagus {perhaps the Gotaälv river flowing from the Vänern lake} river springs from the bowels of the earth and flows surging into the Ocean.
Ab occidente namque immensu pelago circumdatur, a septentrione quoque innavigabili eodem vastissimo concluditur Oceano, ex quo quasi quodam brachio exienti, sinu distento, Germanicum mare efficitur.	And on the west it is surrounded by an immense sea. On the north it is bounded by the same vast unnavigable Ocean, from which the German Sea {the North Sea} is formed by means of a protruding bay as though by a kind of outstretched arm.
18	
Ubi etiam parvae quidem, sed plures perhibentur insulae esse dispositae, ad quas si congelato mari ob nimium frigus lupi transierint, luminibus feruntur orbari. Ita non solum inhospitalis hominibus, verum etiam beluis terra crudelis est.	Here also there are said to be many small islands scattered round about. If wolves cross over to these islands when the sea is frozen by reason of the great cold, they are said to lose their sight. Thus the land is not only inhospitable to men but cruel even to wild beasts.
19	
In Scandia vero insula, unde nobis sermo est, licet multae et diversae maneant nationes, septem tamen earum nomina meminit Ptolemaeus. Apium ibi turba mellifica ob nimium frigus nusquam repperitur. In cuius parte arctoa gens AlogiR {= Halogii} consistit, quae fertur in aestate media quadraginta diebus et noctibus lucem habere continuas, itemque brumali tempore eodem dierum noctiumque numero lucem claram nescire.	Now in the island of Scandia, whereof I speak, there dwell many and diverse nations, though Ptolemaeus mentions the names of but seven of them. There the honey-making swarms of bees are nowhere to be found on account of the exceeding great cold. In the northern part of the island the race of the Halogians {= inhabitants of Halogaland in northern Norway} live, who are said to have continual light in mid summer for forty days and nights, and who likewise have no clear light in the winter season for the same number of days and nights.
20	

Ita, alternato maerore cum gaudio, beneficio aliis damnoque impar est.	By reason of this alternation of sorrow and joy they are like no other race in their sufferings and blessings.
Et hoc quare? Quia prolixioribus diebus solem ad orientem per axis marginem vident redeuntem, brevioribus vero non sic conspicitur apud illos, sed aliter, quia austrina signa percurrit, et qui nobis videtur sol ab imo surgere, illos per terrae marginem dicitur circuire.	And why? Because during the longer days they see the sun returning to the east above the horizon of the north pole, but on the shorter days it is not seen thus; instead, because it is passing through the southern constellations, the sun, which to us seems to rise from below, is said to circle them beneath the horizon.
21	
Aliae vero ibi sunt gentes: Screre-Fennae {= Scrithi-Fennae}, quae frumentorum non queritant victum, sed carnibus ferarum atque ovis avium vivunt; ubi tanta paludibus fetura ponitur, ut et augmentum praestent generi et satietatem ad copiam genti.	There also are other peoples. There are the Scripi-Fennae {= "Schreit-Finnen," "Walking Finns"}, who do not seek grain for food but live on the flesh of wild beasts and birds' eggs; for there are such multitudes of young game in the swamps as to provide for the natural increase of their kind and to afford satisfaction to the needs of the people.
Alia vero gens ibi moratur, Sweans, quae velut Thuringi equis utuntur eximiis.	But still another race dwells there, the Swedes, who, like the Þuringos {"-ingos" ["progeny"] spelled "-iggos" in Gothic) "Race of the Bold"}, have splendid horses.
Hi quoque sunt, qui in usibus Romanorum sapphirinas pelles, commercio interveniente, per alias innumeras gentes transmittunt, famosi pellium decora nigredine. Hi quum inopes vivunt, ditissime vestiuntur.	Here also are those who send through innumerable other tribes the sappherine skins to trade for Roman use. They are a people famed for the dark beauty of their furs and, though living in poverty, are most richly clothed.
22	
Sequitur deinde diversarum turba nationum: Theustes, WagoR, BergjoR, HallinR, Liothida - quorum omnium sedes similiter planae ac fertiles, et propterea inibi aliarum gentium incursionibus infestantur.	Then comes a throng of various nations, Þeustes {inhabitants of the region of Þiust, modern Tjust}, WagoR {inhabitants of the region of Wag}, BergjoR {inhabitants of the *bergaz "mountains"}, HallinR {inhabitants of the region of *hallus "rock"}, Liopida. All their homelands are similarly

	level and fertile. Wherefore they are disturbed there by the attacks of other tribes.
Post hos AhelmiR, Finn-haithae, FerviR, Gauti-Got {= "Gauthi Gothi"}, acre hominum genus et ad bella promptissimum.	Beyond these are the AhelmiR, Finn-haiþae {= Finns of the Heath, the Prairie Finns}, FerviR and Gautigot {clarifying apposition: "Gauts, that is, the Goths"}, a race of men bold and quick to fight.
Dehinc mixti Ewa-Greutingis.	Then come the mixed ones, the Ewa-Greutings {"Ever-Greutings," "Longstanding Sand-dwellers"}.
Hi omnes excisis rupibus quasi castellis inhabitant ritu beluino.	All these live like wild animals in rocks hewn out like castles.
23	
Sunt et his exteriores Ostrogothae, Raumariciae, Rahna-ricii, Finni mitissimi, Scandiae cultoribus omnibus minores; nec non et pares eorum WingulR; Swi-thiudi, cogniti in hac gente reliquis corpore eminentiores: quamvis et Dani, ex ipsorum stirpe progressi, Erulos propriis sedibus expulerunt (quibus non ante multos annos HRod-wulf rex fuit, qui contempto proprio regno ad Theodorici Gothorum regis gremium convolvavit et, ut desiderabat, invenit), qui inter omnes Scandiae nationes nomen sibi ob nimiam proceritatem affectant praecipuum.	And there are beyond these the Ostrogoths, Rauma-rikians {= inhabitants of the southeast Norwegian district of Rauma-ríki}, Rahna-rikians {= inhabitants of the southeast Norwegian district of Rán-ríki}, and the most gentle Finns, lesser than all the inhabitants of Scandia. Like them are the Winguli {= inhabitants of Vingul-mork} also. The Swe-þiuð {= "folk of the Swedes," "Swede-folk"} are of this stock and excel the rest in stature. However, the Dani, who trace their origin to the same stock, drove from their homes the Aírulos {= "Men"; "Earls"}, who claim to be preeminent among all the nations of Scandia because of their tallness - and over whom Hroð-wulf {"Victorious wolf"} was king not many years ago. But he despised his own kingdom and fled to the embrace of Þiuda-reik {"People-ruler," "Leader of the folk"}, king of the Goths, finding there what he desired.
24	
Sunt quamquam et horum positura Granii, Agadii, Eunixi, Thelae, Rugi, Harothi, Ranii.	Furthermore there are in the same neighborhood the Granii {= inhabitants of <i>Gren-mar</i> and <i>Gren-land</i> in

	southern Norway}}, Agðī {= inhabitants of Agðir in southern Norway}}, Eunixi, Þilir {= inhabitants of <i>þela-mork</i> , now <i>Telemarken</i> in southern Norway}}, Rugians {= inhabitants of <i>Roga-land</i> }}, Haruðes {= inhabitants of <i>Horða-land</i> around the Hardangerfjord, later on the lower Elbe} and Ranii.
Hae itaque gentes, Germanis corpore et animo grandiores, pugnabant beluina saevitia.	All these nations surpassed the Germans in size and spirit, and fought with the cruelty of wild beasts.
<p style="text-align: center;">IV <u>(The United Goths)</u> 25</p>	
Ex hac igitur Scandia insula quasi officina gentium aut certe velut vagina nationum cum rege suo nomine Berig, Gothi quondam memorantur egressi: qui ut primum e navibus exeuntes terras attigerunt, ilico nomen loco dederunt. Nam hodieque illic, ut fertur, Gothisc-Andia vocatur.	Now from this island of Scandia, as from a hive of races or a womb of nations, the Goths are said to have come forth long ago under their king, Baírika {"Bear-like"} by name. As soon as they disembarked from their ships and set foot on the land, they straightway gave their name to the place. And even to-day it is said to be called Gutisk-Andja {"Gothic End"}.
<p style="text-align: center;">26</p>	
Unde mox promoventes ad sedes Hulme-Rugorum, qui tunc Oceani ripas insidebant, castra metati sunt, eosque, commisso proelio, propriis sedibus pepulerunt, eorumque vicinos Wandalos jam tunc subjugantes suis applicavere victoriis.	Soon they moved from here to the abodes of the Hulm-Rugians {= "Island Rugians" on the islands in the mouth of the Vistula}, who then dwelt on the shores of Ocean, where they pitched camp, joined battle with them and drove them from their homes. Next they subdued their neighbors, the Vandals {"those who wind" or "those who turn/change"}, and thus added to their victories.
Ubi vero magna populi numerositate crescente et jam paene quinto rege regnante post Beric Filimer, filio Gadaricis, consilio sedit, ut exinde cum familiis, Gothorum promoveret exercitus.	But when the number of the people increased greatly and Fili-mer {"Very famous"}, son of Gada-reik {"Comrade-prince"}, reigned as king - about the fifth since Baírika -, he decided that the army of the Goths with their families should move from

	that region.
27	
Qui aptissimas sedes locaque quum quaereret congrua, pervenit ad Scythiae terras, quae lingua eorum "Ojum" vocabantur, ubi delectatus magna ubertate regionum. Et exercitus medietate transposita, pons dicitur, unde amnem trajecerat, irreparabiliter corruisse, nec ulterius jam cuiquam licuit ire aut redire.	In search of suitable homes and pleasant places they reached the lands of Scythia, which in their tongue are called "Aujom" {"in the waterlands," i.e., southern Russia and Ukraine}. Here they were delighted with the great richness of the country, and it is said that when half of the army had been brought over, the bridge whereby they had crossed the river collapsed irreparably, nor could anyone thereafter pass to or fro.
Nam is locus, ut fertur, tremulis paludibus voragine circumjecta concluditur, quem utraque confusione natura reddidit impervium.	For the place is said to be surrounded by unsteady swamps, with a gulf surrounding it, so that by this double obstacle nature has made it inaccessible.
Verumtamen hodieque illic et voces armentorum audiri et indicia hominum deprehendi, commeantium attestationem, quamvis a longe audientium, credere licet.	And even to-day one may hear in that neighborhood the lowing of cattle and may find traces of men, if we are to believe the stories of travelers, although we must grant that they hear these things from afar.
28	
Haec ergo pars Gothorum, quae apud Filimer dicitur in terras Ojum, emenso amne, transposita, optatum potita solum.	This part of the Goths, which is said to have crossed the river and entered with Filimer {Fili-mêr}, into the country of Aujom, took possession of the desired land.
Nec mora: ilico ad gentem Spalorum adveniunt, consertoque proelio, victoriam adipiscuntur, exindeque jam velut victores ad extremam Scythiae partem, quae Ponto mari vicina est, properant - quemadmodum et in priscis eorum carminibus paene historico ritu in commune recordantur, quod et Ablabius descriptor Gothorum gentis egregius verissima attestatur historia.	There they quickly came upon the race of the Splay, joined battle with them and won the victory. Thence the victors hastened to the farthest part of Scythia, which is near the sea of Pontus; for so the story is generally told in their early songs, in almost historic fashion. Ablabius also, a famous chronicler of the Gothic race, confirms this in his most trustworthy account.
29	
In quam sententiam et nonnulli consensere majorum: Josephus quoque annalium	Some of the ancient writers also agree with the tale. Among these we may mention

relator verissimus, dum ubique veritatis conservet regulam et origines causarum a principio revolvat. Haec vero quae diximus de gente Gothorum principia, cur omiserit, ignoramus: sed tantum Magog de eorum stirpe commemorans, Scythas eos et natione et vocabulo asserit appellatos.	Josephus, a most reliable relator of annals, who everywhere follows the rule of truth and unravels from the beginning the origin of causes; --but why he has omitted the beginnings of the race of the Goths, of which I have spoken, I do not know. He barely mentions Magog of that stock, and says they were Scythians by race and were called so by name.
Cujus soli terminos, antequam aliud ad medium deducamus, necesse est, ut jacent, edicere.	Before we enter on our history, we must describe the boundaries of this land, as it lies.
V <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> 30	
Scythia si quidem Germaniae terrae confinis eo tenus, ubi Hister oritur amnis vel stagnum dilatatur Morsianum, tendens usque ad flumina Tyram-Danastrum et Wagosolam, magnumque illum Danaprum Taurumque montem (non illum Asiae, sed proprium, id est Scythicum) per omnem Maeotidis aditum;	Given that Scythia is bordered by Germany, where the Hister {eastern Danube} river starts or the Morsian swamp widens out, it stretches on to the rivers Dniestr and Bug as well as to the great Dniepr and the Taurus mountain range (not that of Asia Minor, but our own, the Scythian one) over all the approaches to the Sea of Asov;
ultraque Maeotida, per angustias Bosphori, usque ad Caucasum montem amnemque Araxem;	and, on the other side of the Sea of Asov, across the Kerch Strait, all the way to the Caucasus range and the Araks river;
ac deinde in sinistram partem reflexa, post mare Caspium (quod in extremis Asiae finibus ab Oceano euroboro in modum fungi, primum tenui, posthaec latissima et rotunda forma exoritur), vergens ad Hunnos, Albanos et Seres usque, digreditur.	then, turning to the left behind the Caspian Sea (which arises at the outermost edge of Asia from the northeastern ocean in a mushroom-like way, at first slender in shape, then very broad and round), it proceeds onward, extending as far as the Huns, Transcaucasians and Chinese.
31	
Haec, inquam, patria, id est Scythia, longe se tendens lateque aperiens, habet ab oriente Seres, in ipso sui principio litus Caspii maris commanentes; ab occidente Germanos et flumen Vistulae; ab arcto, id est septentrionali, circumdatur oceano, a meridie Persida, Albania, Hiberia, Ponto atque extremo alveo Histri, qui dicitur Danubius ab ostio suo usque ad fontem.	This land, I say, - namely, Scythia, stretching far and spreading wide, - has to the east the Chinese, a race that at the very beginning of its history inhabited the shore of the Caspian Sea. To the west are the Germans and the river Vistula; on the Arctic side, namely the north, it is surrounded by ocean; to the south by Persians, Transcaucasians, Georgia, Asia Minor and the farthest channel of the Hister,

	which is called the Danube all the way from mouth to source.
32	
In eo vero latere, qua Ponticum litus attingit, oppidis haut obscuris involvitur - Boristhenide, Olbia, Callipolida, Chersona, Theodosia, Careon, Myrmecion et Trapezunta -, quas indomitae Scytharum nationes Graecis permiserunt condere, sibimet commercia praestatueros.	But in that region where Scythia touches the Pontic coast it is dotted with towns of no mean fame: Borysthenes, Olbia, Kallipolis, Kherson, Theodosia, Kareon {modern Kertsch }, Myrmekion and Trapezus {modern Trebizond }. These towns the wild Scythian tribes allowed the Greeks to build to afford them means of trade.
In cujus Scythiae medium est locus, qui Asiam Europamque ab alterutra dividit, Rhiphaei scilicet montes, qui Tanaim vastissimum fundunt intrantem Maeotida cujus paludis circuitus passuum milia CXLIII {centum quadraginta quattuor}, nusquam octo ulnis altius subsidentis.	In the midst of Scythia is the place that separates Asia and Europe, I mean the Central Russian Upland, from which the mighty Don flows. This river enters the Sea of Asov, a marsh having a circuit of one hundred and forty-four miles and nowhere subsiding to a depth greater than eight fathoms.
33	
In qua Scythia prima ab occidente gens residet Gepidarum, quae magnis opinatisque ambitur fluminibus.	In the land of Scythia to the westward dwells, first of all, the race of the Gibiðos {"The Givers", tauntingly misnamed as Gipidos, "The Slow, Dull ones"}, surrounded by great and famous rivers.
Nam Tisia per aquilonem ejus chorumque discurrit; ab africo vero magnus ipse Danubius, ab eoo fluvijs Aluta secat, qui rapidus ac verticosus in Histri fluentia furens divolvitur.	For the Tisza flows through it on the north and northwest, and on the southwest is the great Danube. On the east it is cut by the Aluta river, a swiftly eddying stream that sweeps whirling into the Hister's waters.
34	
Introrsus illis Dacia est, ad coronae speciem arduis Alpibus emunita, juxta quarum sinistrum latus, quod in aquilonem vergit, ab ortu Vistulae fluminis per immensa spatia Wenedarum natio populosa consedit. Quorum nomina licet nunc per varias familias et loca mutantur, principaliter tamen Sclaweni et Antes nominantur.	Within these rivers lies Dacia, encircled by the lofty Alps as by a crown. Near their left ridge, which inclines toward the north, and beginning at the source of the Vistula, the populous race of the Weneþi dwell, occupying a great expanse of land. Though their names now vary amid various clans and places, yet they are chiefly called Sclaweni and Antes.

35	
Sclaweni a civitate Noviodunensi et lacu qui appellatur Mursianus usque ad Danastrum et in boream Vistula tenus commorantur: hi paludes silvasque pro civitatibus habent.	The abode of the Sclaweni extends from the city of Noviodunum {modern Isaktscha, Romania } and the lake called Mursianus to the Dniestr, and northward as far as the Vistula. They have swamps and forests for their cities.
Antes vero, qui sunt eorum fortissimi, qua Ponticum mare curvatur, a Danastro extenduntur usque ad Danaprum, quae flumina multis mansionibus ab invicem absunt.	The Antes, who are the bravest of these peoples dwelling around the bend of the Black Sea, spread from the Dnestr to the Dniepr, rivers that are many days' journey apart.
36	
Ad litus autem Oceani, ubi tribus faucibus fluenta Vistulae fluminis ebibuntur, Widiwarii resident, ex diversis nationibus aggregati; post quos ripam Oceani item Aesti tenent, pacatum hominum genus omnino.	But on the shore of Ocean, where the floods of the river Vistula empty from three mouths, the Wiði-warii {= inhabitants of Wid-land, OE Wit-land } dwell, a people gathered out of various tribes. Beyond them the Aesti, a subject race, likewise hold the shore of Ocean.
Quibus in austrum assidet gens Acatzirorum fortissima, frugum ignara, quae pecoribus et venationibus victitat.	To the south dwell the Acatziri, a very brave tribe ignorant of agriculture, who subsist on their flocks and by hunting.
37	
Ultra quos distendunt supra mare Ponticum Bulgarum sedes, quos notissimos peccatorum nostrorum mala fecerunt.	Farther away and above the Black Sea are the abodes of the Bulgars, well known from the wrongs done to them by reason of our sins.
Hinc jam Hunni, quasi fortissimarum gentium fecundissimus caespes, bifariam populorum rabie pullularunt.	From here the Huns, like a kind of very fertile sod of exceedingly strong tribes, expanded with ferocity in two branches against other peoples.
Nam alii Altziagiri, alii Sabiri nuncupantur, qui tamen sedes habent divisas: juxta Chersonam Altziagiri, quo Asiae bona avidus mercator importat, qui aestate campos pervagantur, effusas sedes, prout armentorum invitaverint pabula, hieme supra mare Ponticum se referentes.	Some of these are called Altziagiri, others Sabiri; and they have different dwelling places. The Altziagiri are near Kherson, where the avaricious trader brings in the goods of Asia. In summer they range the plains, their broad domains, wherever the pasturage for their cattle invites them, and in winter returning to over the Black Sea.

Hunuguri autem hinc sunt noti, quia ab ipsis pellium murinarum venit commercium: quos tantorum virorum formidavit audacia.	Now the Hunuguri {"Hungarians," lit. "Ten Tribes"} are known to us from the fact that they trade in marten skins. The audacity of the men mentioned above has intimidated them.
38	
Gothorum mansione prima in Scythiae solo juxta paludem Maeotidem, secunda in Moesia Thraciaeque et Dacia, tertia supra mare Ponticum rursus in Scythis legimus habitasse:	We read that on their first migration the Goths dwelt in the land of Scythia near the Sea of Asov. On the second migration they went to Moesia, Thrace and Dacia, and after their third they dwelt again in Scythia, above the Black Sea.
Nec eorum fabulas alicubi repperimus scriptas, qui eos dicunt in Britannia vel in unaqualibet insularum in servitutem redactos et unius caballi pretio a quodam ereptos.	Nor do we find anywhere in their written records legends which tell of their subjection to slavery in Britain or in some other island, or of their redemption by some man at the cost of a single horse.
Aut certe si quis eos aliter dixerit in nostra urbe, quam quod nos diximus, fuisse exortos, nobis aliquid obstrepet: nos enim potius lectioni credimus quam fabulis anilibus consentimus.	Of course if anyone in our city says that the Goths had an origin different from that I have related, he will be vociferously countering me. For myself, I prefer to believe what I have read, rather than put trust in old wives' tales.
39	
Ut ergo ad nostrum propositum redeamus, in prima sede Scythiae juxta Maeotidem commanentes praefati, unde loquimur, Filimer regem habuisse noscuntur.	To return, then, to my subject. The aforesaid race of which I speak is known to have had Fili-mer as king while they remained in their first home in Scythia near the Sea of Asov.
In secunda, id est Daciae, Thraciaeque et Moesiae solo, Zalmoxen, quem mirae philosophiae eruditionis fuisse testantur plerique scriptores annalium.	In their second home, that is, in the countries of Dacia, Thrace and Moesia, Zalmoxes reigned, whom many writers of annals mention as a man of remarkable learning in philosophy.
Nam et Zeutam prius habuerunt eruditum, post etiam Decaeneum, tertium Zalmoxen, de quo superius diximus.	Yet even before this they had a learned man, Zeuta, and after him Decaeneus; and the third was Zalmoxes of whom I have made mention above.
Nec defuerunt, qui eos sapientiam erudirent.	Nor did they lack teachers of wisdom.
40	

Unde et paene omnibus barbaris Gothi sapientiores semper exstiterunt Graecisque paene consimiles, ut refert Dio, qui historias eorum annalesque Graeco stilo composuit.	Wherefore the Goths have ever been wiser than other barbarians and were nearly like the Greeks, as Dio relates, who wrote their history and annals with a Greek pen.
Qui dicit primum Tarabosteseos, deinde vocatos Pilleatos hos, qui inter eos generosi exstabant, ex quibus eis et reges et sacerdotes ordinabantur.	He says that those of noble birth among them, from whom their kings and priests were appointed, were called first Tarabostesei and then Pilleati {"Felt-cap-wearers"}.
Adeo ergo fuere laudati Getae, ut dudum Martem, quem poetarum fallacia deum belli pronuntiat, apud eos fuisse dicant exortum.	Moreover so highly were the Getae praised that Mars, whom the fables of poets call the god of war, was reputed to have been born among them.
Unde et Vergilius: "gradivumque patrem, Geticis qui praesidet arvis" {Aeneidis 3,35}.	Hence Virgil says: "Father Gradivus rules the Getic fields" {Aeneid 3,35}.
41	
Quem Martem Gothi semper asperrima placavere cultura (nam victimae ejus mortes fuere captorum), opinantes bellorum praesulem apte humani sanguinis effusione placandum.	Now Mars has always been worshipped by the Goths with cruel rites, and captives were slain as his victims. They thought that he who is the lord of war ought to be appeased by the shedding of human blood.
Huic praedae primordia vovebant, huic truncis suspendebantur exuviae, eratque illis religionis praeter ceteros insinuatus affectus, cum parenti devotio numinis videretur impendi.	To him they devoted the first share of the spoil, and in his honor arms stripped from the foe were suspended from trees. And they had more than all other races a deep spirit of religion, since the worship of this god seemed to be really bestowed upon their ancestor.
42	
Tertia vero sede super mare Ponticum jam humaniores et, ut superius diximus, prudentiores effecti, divisi per familias populi, Wisigothi familiae Balthorum, Ostrogothae praeclaris Amalis serviebant.	In their third dwelling place, which was above the Black Sea, they had now become more civilized and, as I have said before, were more learned. Then the people were divided under ruling families. The Visigoths served the family of the Balpi and the Ostrogoths served the renowned Amali.
43	

<p>Quorum studium fuit primum inter alias gentes vicinas arcum intendere nervis, Lucano plus historico quam poeta testante:</p> <p>"Armeniosque arcus Geticis intendere nervis." {Pharsalia 8,221}</p>	<p>They were the first race of men to string the bow with cords, as Lucan, who is more of a historian than a poet, affirms:</p> <p>"They string Armenian bows with Getic cords." {Pharsalia 8,221}</p>
<p>Ante quos etiam cantu majorum facto modulationibus citharisque caneant, et Erpamaræ, Analæ, Frithigerni, Widigojæ et aliorum, quorum in hac gente magna opinio est, quales vix heroas fuisse miranda jactat antiquitas.</p>	<p>In earliest times they sang of the deeds of their ancestors in strains of song accompanied by the cithara; chanting of Erpa-marha {"Brown horse"}, Anala {"Grandfather"}, Fripi-gáirn {"Peace-yearning," "Peace-desirous"}, Widu-gauja {"Woodland man," "Forest-region dweller"} and others whose fame among them is great; such heroes as admiring antiquity scarce proclaims its own to be.</p>
44	
<p>Tunc, ut fertur, Sesostri Scythis lacrimabile sibi potius intulit bellum, eis videlicet, quos Amazonum viros prisca tradit auctoritas, de quibus feminis bellatricibus Orosius in primo volumine professa voce testatur.</p>	<p>Then, as the story goes, Sesostri {of Egypt, Rameses II, the Great, 1973-1928 B.C.} waged a war disastrous to himself against the Scythians, whom ancient tradition asserts to have been the husbands of the Amazons. Concerning these female warriors Orosius speaks in convincing language.</p>
<p>Unde cum Gothis eum tunc dimicasse evidenter probamus, quem cum Amazonum viris pugnasse cognoscimus absolute, qui tunc a Borysthene amne, quem accolæ Danaprum vocant, usque ad Tanain fluvium circa sinum paludis Maeotidis consedebant.</p>	<p>Thus we can clearly prove that Sesostri then fought with the Goths, since we know surely that he waged war with the husbands of the Amazons. They dwelt at that time along a bend of the Sea of Asov, from the river Borysthene, which the natives call the Dniepr, to the stream of the Don.</p>
45	
<p>Tanain vero hunc dico, qui ex Rhiphaeis montibus dejectus adeo praeceps ruit, ut, quum vicina flumina sive Maeotis et Bosphorus gelu solidentur, solus amnium, confragoris montibus vaporatus, numquam Scythico durescit algore, hic Asiae Europaeque terminus famosus habetur.</p>	<p>By the Don I mean the river which flows down from the Central Russian Uplands and rushes with so swift a current that when the neighboring streams or the Sea of Asov and the Kerch Strait are frozen fast, it is the only river that is kept warm by the rugged mountains and is never solidified by the Scythian cold. It is also famous as the</p>

	boundary of Asia and Europe.
Nam alter est ille, qui montibus Chrinnorum oriens, in Caspium mare dilabitur.	For the other Don {= the Volga} is the one which rises in the mountains of the Chrinni {= the Volga Hills? Ural Mountains? Actual source: Valdai Hills northwest of Moscow} and flows into the Caspian Sea.
46	
Danaper autem ortus grande palude, quasi ex matre profunditur.	The Dniepr begins in a great marsh and issues from it as from its mother.
Hic usque ad medium sui dulcis est et potabilis, piscesque nimii saporis gignit, ossibus carentes cartilaginem tantum habentes in corporis continentiam, sed ubi fit Ponto vicinior, parvum fontem suscipit, cui Exampaeo cognomen est, adeo amarum, ut, quum sit quadraginta dierum itinere navigabilis, hujus aquis exiguis immutetur, infectusque ac dissimilis sui inter Graeca oppida Callipidas et Hypanis in mare defluat, ad cujus ostia insula est in fronte, Achillis nomine.	It is sweet and fit to drink as far as half-way down its course. It also produces fish of a fine flavor and without bones, having only cartilage as the supporting framework of their bodies. But as it approaches the Black Sea it receives a little spring called Exampaeus {= "Sacred Roads" - Herodotus}, so very bitter that although the river is navigable for the length of a forty days' voyage, it is so altered by the water of this scanty stream as to become tainted and unlike itself, and flows thus tainted into the sea between the Greek towns of Callipidae {region on the river Tyras, modern Dneestr} and Hypanis {on the river Hypanis, modern Bug}. At its mouths there is an island named Achilles.
Inter hos terra vastissima, silvis consita, paludibus dubia.	Between these two rivers is a vast land filled with forests and treacherous swamps.
VI 47	
Hic ergo Gothis morantibus, Sesostris, Aegyptiorum rex, in bellum irruit quibus tunc Tanausis rex erat, quo proelio ad Phasim fluvium (a quo Phasides aves exortae in toto mundo epulis potentum exuberant) Tanausis, Gothorum rex, Sesostri Aegyptiorum occurrit, eumque graviter debellans in Aegyptum usque persecutus est, et nisi Nili amnis intransmeabilis obstitissent fluentia vel	This was the region where the Goths dwelt when Sesostris {I, 1973-1928 B.C.}, king of the Egyptians, made war upon them. Their king at that time was Tanausis {allegedly 1323-1290 B.C.}. In a battle at the river Phasis {= Rioni, south of the Caucasus} (whence come the birds called "pheasants," which are found in abundance at the banquets of the powerful all over the world) Tanausis, king of the

munitiones, quas dudum sibi ob incursiones Aethiopum Sesostri fieri praecepisset, ibi in ejus eum patria exstinxisset, sed quum eum ibi positum non valuisset laedere, revertens paene omnem Asiam subjugavit et sibi tunc caro amico Sornio, regi Medorum, ad persolvendum tributum subditos fecit, ex cujus exercitu victores tunc nonnulli, provincias subditas contuentes et in omni fertilitate pollentes, deserto suorum agmine, sponte in Asiae partibus resederunt.	Goths, met Sesostri, king of the Egyptians, and there inflicted a severe defeat upon him, pursuing him all the way to Egypt. Had he not been restrained by the waters of the impassable Nile and the fortifications which Sesostri had long ago ordered to be made against the raids of the Ethiopians, he would have slain him in his own land. But finding he had no power to injure him there, he returned and conquered almost all Asia Minor and made it subject and tributary to Sornus, king of the Medes, who was then his dear friend. At that time some of his victorious army, seeing that the subdued provinces were rich and fruitful, deserted their companies and of their own accord remained in various parts of Asia.
48	
Ex quorum nomine vel genere Pompejus Trogius Parthorum dicit exstitisse prosapiam, unde etiam hodieque lingua Scythica "fugaces," quod est "Parthi," dicuntur, suoque generi respondentes inter omnes paene Asiae nationes soli sagittarii sunt et acerrimi bellatores.	From their name or race Pompejus Trogius says the stock of the Parthians had its origin. Hence even to-day in the Scythian tongue they are called "Parthi," that is, "Deserters." And in consequence of their descent they are archers - almost alone among all the nations of Asia - and are very valiant warriors.
De nomine vero, quo diximus eos Parthos, fugaces, ita aliquanti etymologiam traxerunt, ut dicerentur Parthi, quia suos refugerunt parentes.	Now in regard to the name, though I have said they were called Parthi because they were deserters, some have traced the derivation of the word otherwise, saying that they were called Parthi because they fled from their kinsmen.
Hunc ergo Tanausim regem Gothorum mortuum inter numina sui populi coluerunt.	Now when Tanausis, king of the Goths, was dead, his people worshipped him as one of their gods.
VII 49	
Post cujus decessum, et exercitu ejus quum successores ipsius in aliis partibus expeditionem gererent, feminae Gothorum a quadam vicina gente temptantur in praedam.	After his death, while the army under his successors was engaged in an expedition in other parts, a neighboring tribe attempted to carry off women of the Goths as booty.
Quae, doctae a viris, fortiter restiterunt	But they made a brave resistance, as they

hostesque super se venientes cum magna verecundia abegerunt.	had been taught to do by their husbands, and routed in disgrace the enemy who had come upon them.
Qua patrata victoria fretaeque majore audacia, invicem se cohortantes arma arripiunt, eligentesque duas audentiores, Lampeto et Marpesiam, principatui surrogarunt.	When they had won this victory, they were inspired with greater daring. Mutually encouraging each other, they took up arms and chose two of the bolder, Lampeto and Marpesia, to act as their leaders.
50	
<p>Quae dum curam gerunt, ut et propria defenderent et aliena vastarent, sortitae, Lampeto restitit ad fines patrios tuendos, Marpesia vero, feminarum agmine sumpto, novum genus exercitus duxit in Asiam, diversasque gentes bello superans, alias vero pace concilians; ad Caucasum venit, ibique certum tempus demorans loco nomen dedit "Saxum Marpesiae," unde et Vergilius,</p> <p><i>"quam si dura silex aut stet Marpesia cautes", {Aeneidis 6,471}</i></p> <p>in eo loco, ubi post haec Alexander Magnus, portas constituens, "Pylas Caspiae" nominavit, quas nunc Lazorum gens custodit pro munitione Romana.</p>	<p>While they were in command, they cast lots both for the defense of their own country and the devastation of other lands. So Lampeto remained to guard their native land and Marpesia took a company of women and led this novel army into Asia. After conquering various tribes in war and making others their allies by treaties, she came to the Caucasus. There she remained for some time and gave the place the name "Rock of Marpesia," of which also Virgil makes mention:</p> <p><i>"Like to hard flint or the Marpesian cliff." {Aeneid 6,471}</i></p> <p>It was here Alexander the Great afterwards built gates and named them the "Caspian Gates" {= Sirdar Pass, near Derbent on the western shore of the Caspian Sea in southern Dagestan}, which now the Lezgin tribe guards as a Roman fortification.</p>
51	
Hic ergo certum tempus Amazones commanentes confortatae sunt.	Here, then, the Amazons remained for some time and were much strengthened.
Unde egressae et Halym fluvium, qui juxta Gangram civitatem praeterfluit, transeunt, Armeniam, Syriam Ciliciamque, Galatiam, Pisidiam omniaque Asiae loca aequa felicitate domuerunt; Ioniam Eoliamque conversae deditas sibi provincias effecerunt.	Then they departed and crossed the Halys (= Kisil-Irmak) river, which flows near the city of Çankiri, and with equal success subdued Armenia, Syria, Cilicia, Galatia, Pisidia and all the places of Asia Minor. Then they turned to Ionia and Aeolia, and made provinces of them after their surrender.

Ubi diutius dominantes etiam civitates castraque suo in nomine dicaverunt, Ephesi quoque templum Dianae ob sagittandi ac venandi studium, quibus se artibus tradidissent, effusis opibus mirae pulchritudinis condiderunt.	Here they ruled for some time and even founded cities and camps bearing their name. At Ephesus also they built a very costly and beautiful temple for Diana, because of her delight in archery and the chase - arts to which they were themselves devoted.
52	
Tali ergo in Scythia genitae feminae casu Asiae regnis potitae, per centum paene annos tenuerunt et sic demum ad proprias socias in cautes Marpesias, quas superius diximus, repedarunt, in montem scilicet Caucasi.	Then these Scythian-born women, who had by such a chance gained control over the kingdoms of Asia, held them for almost a hundred years, and at last retreated to their own kinsfolk in the Marpesian rocks I have mentioned above, namely the Caucasus mountains.
Cujus montis quia facta iterum mentio est, non ab re arbitror ejus tractum situmque describere, quando maximam partem orbis noscitur circuire jugo continuo.	Inasmuch as I have twice mentioned this mountain-range, I think it not out of place to describe its extent and situation, for, as is well known, it encompasses a great part of the earth with its continuous chain.
53	
Is namque ab Indico mari surgens, qua meridiem respicit, sole vaporatus ardescit; qua septentrioni patet, rigentibus ventis est obnoxius et pruinis. Mox in Syriam curvato angulo reflexus, licet amnium plurimos emittat, in Vasianensem tamen regionem Euphratem Tigrimque navigeros, ad opinionem maximam perennium fontium, copiosis fundit uberibus.	Beginning at the Indian Ocean, where it faces the south it is warm, giving off vapor in the sun; where it lies open to the north it is exposed to chill winds and frost. Then bending back into Syria with a curving turn, it not only sends forth many other streams, but pours from its plenteous breasts into the Vasianensian { = the Basilisené (in Armenia) of Ptolemaeus 5,13,13?} region the Euphrates and the Tigris, navigable rivers famed for their unfailing springs.
Qui amplexantes terras Syrorum "Mesopotamiam" et appellari faciunt et videri, in sinum rubri maris fluenta deponentes.	These rivers surround the land of the Syrians and cause it to be called "Mesopotamia" { = lit., "Between-the-rivers Land" }, as it truly is. Their waters empty into the bosom of the Persian Gulf.
54	
Tunc in boream revertens Scythicas terras jugum antefatum magnis flexibus	Then turning back to the north, the range I have spoken of passes with great bends

pervagatur atque ibidem opinatissima flumina in Caspium mare profundens Araxem, Cysum et Cambisem, continuatoque jugo ad Rhiphaeos usque montes extenditur.	through the Scythian lands. There {i.e., from the Armenian Highland in northeast Asia Minor} it sends forth very famous rivers into the Caspian Sea - the Aras, the Kur and the Jora. It goes on in continuous range all the way to the Central Russian Upland.
Indeque Scythicis gentibus dorso suo terminum praebens ad Pontum usque descendit, consertisque collibus Histri quoque fluentia contingit, quo amne scissus dehiscens, in Scythia quoque Taurus vocatur.	Thence it descends from the north toward the Black Sea, furnishing a boundary to the Scythian tribes by its ridge, and even touches the waters of the Danube {= probably the Dniepr} with its clustered hills. Being cut by this river, it divides, and in Scythia is named Taurus {the Tauric Chersonese, i.e., the Crimean Peninsula} also.
55	
Talis ergo tantusque et paene omnium montium maximus excelsas suas erigens summitates, naturali constructione praestat gentibus inexpugnanda munimina.	Such then is the great range, almost the mightiest of mountain chains, rearing aloft its summits and by its natural conformation supplying men with impregnable strongholds.
Nam locatim recisus, qua, disrupto jugo, vallis hiatu patescit, nunc Caspiae portas, nunc Armenias, nunc Cilicias, vel secundum locum qualis fuerit, facit, vix tamen plaustro meabilis, lateribus in altitudinem utrimque desectis, qui pro gentium varietate diverso vocabulo nuncupatur.	Here and there it divides where the ridge breaks apart and leaves a deep gap, thus forming now the Caspian Gates, and again the Armenian or the Cilician Gates, or of whatever name the place may be. Yet they are barely passable for a wagon, for both sides are sharp and steep as well as very high. The range has different names among various peoples.
Hunc enim Lammum, mox Propanissimum Indus appellat; Parthus primum Castram, post Niphatem edicit; Syrus et Armenius Taurum, Scythia Caucasum ac Rhiphaeum, iterumque in fine Taurum cognominat; aliaeque conplurimae gentes huic jugo dedere vocabula.	The Indian calls it the Himalaya range here and there the Hindu Kush. The Parthian calls it first Choatras {= mountains of Assyria and Media} and afterward Niphates {part of the Taurus range in Armenia, now Ala-dagh}; the Syrian and Armenian call it Taurus; the Scythian names it Caucasus and Rhiphaeus, and at its end calls it Taurus. Many other tribes have given names to the range.
Et quia de ejus continuatione pauca libavimus, ad Amazones, unde divertimus,	Now that we have devoted a few words to describing its extent, let us return to the

redeamus.	subject of the Amazons.
VIII 56	
Quae veritae, ne sua proles raresceret, a vicinis gentibus concubitus petierunt, factis nundinis semel in anno, ita ut futuri temporis eadem die revertentibus in id ipsum, quicquid partus masculi edidissent, patri redderent, quicquid vero feminei sexus nasceretur, mater ad arma bellica erudiret; sive, ut quibusdam placet, editis maribus, novercali odio infantis miserandi fata rumpebant.	Fearing their race would fail, they sought sexual intercourse with neighboring tribes. They appointed a day for meeting once in every year, so that when they should return to the same place on that day in the following year each mother might give over to the father whatever male child she had borne, but should herself keep and train for warfare whatever children of the female sex were born. Or else, as some maintain, they exposed the males, destroying the life of the ill-fated child with a hate like that of a stepmother.
Ita apud illas detestabile puerperium erat, quod ubique constat esse votivum.	Among them bearing a son was detested, though everywhere else it is desired.
57	
Quae crudelitas illis terrorem maximum cumulabat opinionis vulgatae. Nam quae, rogo, spes esset capto, ubi indulgeri vel filio nefas habebatur?	The terror of their cruelty was increased by common rumor; for what hope, pray, would there be for a captive, when it was considered wrong to spare even a son?
Contra has, ut fertur, pugnavit Hercules, et Menalippen paene plus dole quam virtute subegit.	Hercules, they say, fought against them and overcame Menalippe, yet more by guile than by valor.
Theseus vero Hippolyten in praeda tulit, de qua et genuit Hippolytum.	Theseus moreover, took Hippolyte captive, and of her he begat Hippolytus.
Hae quoque Amazones post haec habuere reginam nomine Penthesileam, cujus Trojano bello exstant clarissima documenta.	And in later times the Amazons had a queen named Penthesilea, famed in the tales of the Trojan war.
Nam hae feminae usque ad Alexandrum Magnum referuntur tenuisse regimen.	These women are said to have kept their power even to the time of Alexander the Great.
IX 58	
Sed ne dicas: "De viris Gothorum sermo assumptus, cur in feminis tamdiu	But say not "Why does a story which deals with the men of the Goths have so much to

perseverat?"	say of their women?"
Audi et virorum insignem et laudabilem fortitudinem.	Hear, then, the tale of the famous and glorious valor of the men.
Dio historicus et antiquitatum diligentissimus inquisitor, qui operi suo "Getica" titulum dedit (quos Getas jam superiore loco Gothos esse probavimus, Orosio Paulo dicente) - hic Dio regem illis post tempora multa commemorat nomine Telephum.	Now Dio, the historian and diligent investigator of ancient times, who gave to his work the title "Getica" (and the Getae we have proved in a previous passage to be Goths, on the testimony of Orosius Paulus) - this Dio, I say, makes mention of a later king of theirs named Telephus.
Ne vero quis dicat hoc nomen a lingua Gothica omnino peregrinum esse, qui nescit animadvertat usu pleraque nomina gentes amplecti, ut Romani Macedonum, Graeci Romanorum, Sarmatae Germanorum, Gothi plerumque mutantur Hunnorum.	Lest anyone say that this name is quite foreign to the Gothic tongue, let the ignorant find fault with the fact that the tribes of men make use of many names, even as the Romans borrow from the Macedonians, the Greeks from the Romans, the Sarmatians from the Germans, and the Goths frequently from the Huns.
59	
Is ergo Telephus, Herculis filius natus ex Auge, sorori Priami conjugio copulatus, procerus quidem corpore, sed plus vigore terribilis, qui, paternam fortitudinem propriis virtutibus aequans, Herculis genitum formae quoque similitudine referebat. Hujus itaque regnum Moesiam appellavere majores.	This Telephus, then, a son of Hercules by Auge, and the husband of a sister of Priam, was of towering stature and terrible strength. He matched his father's valor by virtues of his own and also recalled his sonship of Hercules by his likeness in appearance. Our ancestors called his kingdom Moesia.
Quae provincia habet ab oriente ostia fluminis Danubii, a meridie Macedoniam, ab occasu Histriam, a septentrione Danubium.	This province has on the east the mouths of the Danube, on the south Macedonia, on the west Histria and on the north the Danube.
60	
Is ergo antefatus habuit bellum cum Danaïis, in qua pugna Thesandrum ducem Graeciae interemit et dum Ajacem infestus invadit Ulixemque persequitur, vitibus equo cadente ipse corrui Achillesque jaculo femore sauciatus diu mederi nequivit; Graecos tamen, quamvis jam saucius, e suis finibus proturbavit.	Now this king we have mentioned carried on wars with the Greeks, and in their course he slew in battle Thesander, the leader of Greece. But while he was making a hostile attack upon Ajax and was pursuing Ulysses, his horse became entangled in some vines and fell. He himself was thrown and wounded in the thigh by a javelin of Achilles, so that for a long time he could not

	be healed. Yet, despite his wound, he drove the Greeks from his land.
Telepho vero defuncto, Euryphilus filius successit in regno, ex Priami Phrygum regis germana progenitus.	Now when Telephus died, his son Euryphilus succeeded to the throne, being a son of the sister of Priam, king of the Phrygians.
Qui, ob Cassandreae amorem bello interesse Troiano ut parentibus soceroque ferret auxilium cupiens, mox venisset exstinctus est.	For love of Cassandra he sought to take part in the Trojan war, that he might come to the help of her parents and his own father-in-law; but soon after his arrival he was killed.
X 61	
Tunc Cyrus, rex Persarum, post grande intervallum et paene post DCXXX {= sescentos triginta} annorum tempus (Pompeio Trogo testante), Getarum reginae Tomyri, sibi exitiabile, intulit bellum.	Then Cyrus, king of the Persians, after a long interval of almost exactly six hundred and thirty years {i.e., in 559 B.C.} (as Pompeius Trogus relates), waged a war, fatal to himself against Tomyris, Queen of the Getae.
Qui, elatus ex Asiae victoriis, Getas nititur subjugare, quibus, ut diximus, regina erat Tomyris.	Elated by his victories in Asia, he strove to conquer the Getae, whose queen, as I have said, was Tomyris.
Quae quum ab Araxe amne Cyri arcere potuisset accessum, transitum tamen permisit, eligens armis eum vincere quam locorum beneficio summovere; quod et factum est.	Though she could have stopped the approach of Cyrus at the river Araxes, yet she permitted him to cross, preferring to overcome him in battle rather than to thwart him by advantage of position. And so she did.
62	
Et, veniente Cyro, primo cessit fortuna Parthis in tantum, ut et filium Tomyris et plurimum exercitum trucidarent.	As Cyrus approached, fortune at first so favored the Parthians that they slew both the son of Tomyris and most of the army.
Sed, iterato Marte, Getae cum sua regina Parthos devictos superant atque prosternunt opimamque praedam de eis auferunt, ibique primum Gothorum gens serica vidit tentoria.	But when the battle was renewed, the Getae and their queen defeated, conquered and overwhelmed the Parthians and took rich plunder from them. There for the first time the race of the Goths saw silken tents.
Tunc Tomyris regina, aucta victoria tantaque praeda de inimicis potita, in partem Moesiae, quae nunc, a magna Scythia nomine mutuato, "minor Scythia"	After achieving this victory and winning so much booty from her enemies, Queen Tomyris crossed over into that part of Moesia which is now called Lesser Scythia

appellatur, transiens, ibi in Ponti Moesiaco litore Tomos civitatem suo de nomine aedificavit.	{= Dobrudja, region on the Black Sea} - a name borrowed from Great Scythia -, and built on the Moesian shore of the Black Sea the city of Tomi {= Köstendjé in Bulgaria}, named after herself.
63	
Dehinc Darius, rex Persarum (Hystaspis filius), Antyri, regis Gothorum, filiam in matrimonium postulavit, rogans pariter atque deterrens, nisi suam peragerent voluntatem.	Afterwards Darius, king of the Persians, the son of Hystaspes, demanded in marriage the daughter of Antyrus, king of the Goths, asking for her hand and at the same time making threats in case they did not fulfill his wish.
Cujus affinitatem Gothi spernentes, legationem ejus frustrarunt.	The Goths spurned this alliance and brought his embassy to naught.
Qui, repulsus dolore, flammatus est et DCC {septingenta} milia armatorum contra ipsos produxit exercitum, verecundiam suam malo publico vindicare contendens; navibusque paene a Chalcedone usque ad Byzantium instar pontium tabulatis atque consertis Thraciam petit et Moesiam; ponteque rursus in Danubio pari modo constructo, duobus mensibus proeliis crebris fatigatus, in Tapis VIII {octo} milia perdidit armatorum, timensque, ne pons Danubii ab suis adversariis occuparetur, celeri fuga in Thraciam repedavit, nec Moesiae solum sibi credens tutum fore aliquantulum remorandi.	Inflamed with anger because his offer had been rejected, he led an army of seven hundred thousand armed men against them and sought to avenge his wounded feelings by inflicting a public injury. Crossing on boats covered with boards and joined like a bridge almost the whole way from Chalcedon to Byzantium, he started for Thrace and Moesia. Later he built a bridge over the Danube in like manner, but he was wearied by two brief months of frequent battles and lost eight thousand armed men near Tapae. Then, fearing the bridge over the Danube would be seized by his foes, he marched back to Thrace in swift retreat, believing the land of Moesia would not be safe for even a short sojourn there.
64	
Post cujus decessum iterum Xerxes, filius ejus, paternas injurias ulcisci se aestimans, cum suorum septingentis et auxiliarium CCC {trecentis} milibus armatorum, rostratis navibus mille ducentis et onerariarum tribus milibus, super Gothos ad bellum profectus nec temptare in conflictu praevaluit, eorum animositate et constantia superatus.	After his death, his son Xerxes planned to avenge his father's wrongs and so proceeded to undertake a war against the Goths with seven hundred thousand of his own men and three hundred thousand armed auxiliaries, twelve hundred ships of war and three thousand transports. But he did not venture to try them in battle, being overawed by their unyielding animosity.

Sic namque ut venerat, absque aliquo certamine suo, cum robore recessit.	So he returned with his force just as he had come, and without fighting a single battle.
65	
Philippus quoque, pater Alexandri Magni, cum Gothis amicitias copulans, Medopam, Gudilae regis filiam, accepit uxorem, ut tali affinitate roboratus Macedonum regna firmaret.	Then Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, made alliance with the Goths and took to wife Medopa, the daughter of King Gudila {Kothêlas, Thracian king}, so that he might render the kingdom of Macedon more secure by the help of this marriage.
Qua tempestate, Dio historico dicente, Philippus, inopiam pecuniae passus, Odessitanam Moesiae civitatem, instructis copiis, vastare deliberat, quae tunc propter viciniam Tomis Gothis erat subjecta.	It was at this time, as the historian Dio relates, that Philip, suffering from need of money, determined to lead out his forces and sack Odessus {= Varna on the Black Sea}, a city of Moesia, which was then subject to the Goths by reason of the neighboring city of Tomi.
Unde et sacerdotes Gothorum - illi qui dii vocabantur - subito, patefactis portis, cum citharis et vestibis candidis obviam sunt egressi, patriis diis, ut, sibi propitii, Macedones repellerent, voce supplicii modulantes.	Thereupon those priests of the Goths that are called the Godly Men {i.e., Gothic guðjans "(heathen) priests," lit. "men of the gods, god-servers"} suddenly opened the gates of Odessus and came forth to meet them. They bore harps and were clad in snowy robes, and chanted in suppliant strains to the gods of their fathers that they might be propitious and repel the Macedonians.
Quos Macedones sic fiducialiter sibi occurrere contuentes stupescunt et, si dici fas est, ab inermibus terrentur armati.	When the Macedonians saw them coming with such confidence to meet them, they were astonished and, so to speak, the armed were terrified by the unarmed.
Nec mora: soluta acie quam ad bellandum construxerant, non tantum ab urbis excidio abstinuerunt, verum etiam et quos foris fuerant jure belli adepti, reddiderunt, foedereque inito ad sua reversi sunt.	Straightway they broke the line they had formed for battle and not only refrained from destroying the city, but even gave back those whom they had captured outside by right of war. Then they made a truce and returned to their own country.
66	
Cujus doli post longum tempus reminiscens, egregius Gothorum duxor Sitalces, CL {centum quinquaginta} virorum milibus congregatis,	After a long time Sitalces, a famous leader of the Goths, remembering this treacherous attempt, gathered a hundred and fifty thousand men and made war upon the

Atheniensibus intulit bellum adversus Perdiccam Macedoniae regem, quem Alexander, apud Babyloniam ministri insidiis potans interitum, Atheniensium principatus hereditario jure reliquerat successorem.	Athenians, fighting against Perdiccas, King of Macedon {429 B.C.}. This Perdiccas had been left by Alexander as his successor to rule Athens by hereditary right, when he drank his destruction at Babylon through the treachery of an attendant.
Magno proelio cum hoc inito, Gothi superiores inventi sunt, et sic pro injuria, quam illi in Moesia dudum fecissent, isti in Graecia discurrentes cunctam Macedoniae vastaverunt.	The Goths engaged in a great battle with him and proved themselves to be the stronger. Thus in return for the wrong which the Macedonians had long before committed in Moesia, the Goths overran Greece and laid waste the whole of Macedonia.
<p style="text-align: center;">XI</p> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">67</p>	
Dehinc, regnante Gothis Burebista, Decaeneus venit in Gothiam, quo tempore Romanorum Sulla potitus est principatu.	Then when Burebistas was king of the Goths {actually king of the Dacians 60-44 B.C.}, Decaeneus {priest-reformer under Burebistas} came to Gothia at the time when Sulla ruled the Romans {ca. 82-79 B.C.}.
Quem Decaeneum suscipiens, Burebistas dedit ei paene regiam potestatem; cujus consilio Gothi Germanorum terras, quas nunc Franci obtinent, populati sunt.	Burebistas received Decaeneus and gave him almost royal power. It was by his advice the Goths ravaged the lands of the Germans, which the Franks {"the Free," "Daring," "Impetuous," "Impudent"} now possess.
<p style="text-align: center;">68</p>	
Caesar vero, qui sibi primus omnium Romanorum vindicavit imperium et paene omnem mundum suae dicioni subegit omniaque regna perdomuit, adeo ut extra nostrum orbem in oceani sinu sepositas insulas occuparet, et nec nomen Romanorum auditu qui noverant, eos Romanis tributarios faceret, Gothos tamen crebro pertemptans, nequivit subjicere.	Then came Caesar, the first of all the Romans to assume imperial power and to subdue almost the whole world, who conquered all kingdoms and even seized islands lying beyond our world, reposing in the bosom of Ocean. He made tributary to the Romans those that knew not the Roman name even by hearsay, and yet was unable to prevail against the Goths, despite his frequent attempts.
Caesar Tiberius jam tertius regnat Romanis: Gothi tamen suo regno incolumes perseverant.	Soon Gajus Tiberius reigned as third emperor of the Romans, and yet the Goths continued in their kingdom unharmed.
<p style="text-align: center;">69</p>	

Quibus hoc erat salubre, hoc accommodum, hoc votivum, ut, quicquid Decaeneus eorum consiliarius praecepisset, hoc modis omnibus expetendum, hoc utile judicantes, effectui manciparent.	Their safety, their advantage, their one hope lay in this, that whatever their counselor Decaeneus advised should by all means be done; and they judged it expedient that they should put it into effect.
Qui cernens eorum animos sibi in omnibus oboedire et naturale eos habere ingenium, in omni paene philosophia eos instruxit: erat namque hujus rei magister peritus.	And when he saw that their minds were obedient to him in all things and that they had natural ability, he taught them almost the whole of philosophy, for he was a skilled master of this subject.
Nam ethicam eos erudiens, barbaricos mores compescuit; physicam tradens, naturaliter propriis legibus vivere fecit, quas usque nunc conscriptas "bi-lageineis" nuncupant; logica instruens, rationis eos supra ceteras gentes fecit expertes; practicen ostendens, in bonis actibus conversari suasit; theoreticen demonstrans, signorum duodecim et per ea planetarum cursus omnemque astronomiam contemplari edocuit, et quomodo lunaris orbis augmentum sustinet aut patitur detrimentum, edixit, solisque globus igneus quantum terrenum orbem in mensura excedat, ostendit, aut quibus nominibus vel quibus signis in polo caeli vergente et revergente trecentae quadraginta et sex stellae ab ortu in occasum praecipites ruant, exposuit.	Thus by teaching them ethics he restrained their barbarous customs; by instructing them in the science of nature, he made them live naturally under laws of their own, which they possess in written form to this day and call <i>bi-lageineis</i> {"laws"}. He taught them logic and made them skilled in reasoning beyond all other races; he showed them practical knowledge and so persuaded them to abound in good works. By explaining theoretical knowledge he urged them to contemplate the progress of the twelve constellations {of the zodiac} and the courses of the planets passing through them, and the whole of astronomy. He told them how the disc of the moon waxes or wanes, and showed them how much the fiery globe of the sun exceeds in size our earthly planet. He explained with which names or designations in the arching heavens the three hundred forty-six stars hurtle from their rising to their setting.
70	
Qualis erat, rogo, voluptas, ut viri fortissimi, quando ab armis quantulumcunque vacassent, doctrinis philosophicis imbuebantur?	Think, I pray you, what pleasure it was for these brave men, when for a little space they had leisure from warfare, to be instructed in the teachings of philosophy!
Videres unum caeli positionem, alium herbarum fruticumque explorare naturas, istum lunae commoda incommodaque, illum solis labores attendere et quomodo, rotatu caeli raptos, retro reduci ad partem	You might have seen one scanning the position of the heavens and another investigating the nature of plants and bushes. Here stood one who studied the waxing and waning of the moon, while still

occiduam, qui ad orientalem plagam ire festinant, ratione accepta quiescere.	another investigated solar eclipses and observed how those bodies which rush to go toward the east are whirled around and borne back to the west by the rotation of the heavens. When they had learned the reason, they were at rest.
71	
Haec et alia nonnulla Decaeneus Gothis sua peritia tradens mirabilis apud eos enituit, ut non solum mediocribus, immo et regibus imperaret.	These and various other matters Decaeneus taught the Goths in his wisdom and gained marvelous reputé among them, so that he ruled not only the common men but their kings.
Elegit namque ex eis tunc nobilissimos prudentioresque viros, quos, theologia instruens, numina quaedam et sacella venerare suasit fecitque sacerdotes, nomen illis Pilleatorum contradens, ut reor, quia opertis capitibus tiaris, quas pilleos alio nomine nuncupamus, litabant:	He chose from among them those that were at that time of noblest birth and superior wisdom and taught them theology, bidding them worship certain divinities and holy places. He conferred the name of Pilleati {"felt-bonneted"} on the priests he ordained, I suppose because they offered sacrifice having their heads covered with tiaras, which we otherwise call <i>pillei</i> {"ceremonial felt caps" (worn at celebrations)}.
72	
Reliquam vero gentem Capillatos dicere iussit, quod nomen Gothi pro magno suscipientes adhuc hodie suis cantionibus reminiscuntur.	But he bade them call the rest of their race Capillati {"having hair," i.e., bare-headed, without headdress}. This name the Goths accepted and prized highly, and they retain it to this day in their songs.
73	
Decedente vero Decaeneo paene pari veneratione habuerunt Comosicum, quia nec impar erat sollertia. Hic etenim et rex illis et pontifex ob suam peritiam habebatur et in summa justitia populos judicabat.	After the death of Decaeneus, they held Comosicus in almost equal honor, because he was not inferior in knowledge. By reason of his wisdom he was accounted their priest and king, and he judged the people with the greatest uprightness.
XII	
Et hoc rebus excedente humanis, Scoryllus rex Gothorum in regnum conscendit et per quadraginta annos in Dacia suis gentibus	When he too had departed from human affairs, Scoryllus ascended the throne as king of the Goths and for forty years ruled his

imperavit.	people in Dacia.
Daciam dico antiquam, quam nunc Gepidarum populi possidere noscuntur.	I mean ancient Dacia, which the race of the Gibiðos now possess.
74	
Quae patria in conspectu Moesiae sita trans Danubium corona montium cingitur, duos tantum habens accessus, unum per Boutas, alterum per Tapas.	This country lies across the Danube within sight of Moesia, and is surrounded by a crown of mountains. It has only two ways of access, one by way of the Boutae and the other by the Tapae.
Hanc Gothiam, quam Daciam appellavere majores, quae nunc, ut diximus, Gepidia dicitur, tunc ab oriente Roxolani, ab occasu Jazyges, a septentrione Sarmatae et Basternae, a meridie amnis Danubii terminabant.	This Gothia, which our ancestors called Dacia and now, as I have said, is called Gibidia, was then bounded on the east by the Roxolani, on the west by the Jazyges, on the north by the Sarmatians and Basternae and on the south by the river Danube.
Nam Jazyges ab Roxolanis Aluto tantum fluvio segregantur.	The Jazyges are separated from the Roxolani by the Oltul river only.
75	
Et quia Danubii mentio facta est, non ab re judico pauca de tali amne egregio indicare.	And since mention has been made of the Danube, I think it not out of place to make brief notice of so excellent a stream.
Nam hic, in Alamannicis arvis exoriens, sexaginta a fonte suo usque ad ostia in Pontum mergentia per mille ducentorum passuum milia hinc inde suscipiens flumina in modum spinae, quam costae ut cratem intexunt, omnino amplissimus est.	Rising in the fields of the Ala-mannans {"All-men," i.e., United Tribes}, it receives sixty streams which flow into it here and there in the twelve hundred miles from its source to its mouths in the Pontus, resembling a backbone into which the ribs mesh as into a kind of grille. It is indeed a most vast river.
Qui lingua Bessorum Hister vocatur, ducentis tantum pedibus in altum aquam in alveo habet profundam.	In the language of the Bessi it is called the Hister, and it has in its channel waters deep to a depth of only two hundred feet.
Hic etenim amnis inter cetera flumina magnitudine omnes superat praeter Nilum.	This stream surpasses in size all other rivers, except the Nile.
Haec de Danubio dixisse sufficiat.	Let this much suffice for the Danube.
Ad propositum vero, unde nos digressi sumus, juvante Domino, redeamus.	But let us now with the Lord's help return to the subject from which we have digressed.
XIII	

76	
Longum namque post intervallum, Domitiano Imperatore regnante ejusque avaritiam metuentes, foedus quod dudum cum aliis principibus pepigerant Gothi solventes, ripam Danubii jam diu possessam ab imperio Romano, deletis militibus cum eorum ducibus, vastaverunt.	Now after a long time, in the reign of the Emperor Domitian {A.D. 81-96}, the Goths, through fear of his avarice, broke the truce they had long observed under other emperors. They laid waste the bank of the Danube, so long held by the Roman Empire, and slew the soldiers and their generals.
Cui provinciae tunc post Agrippam Oppius praeerat Sabinus, Gothis autem Diurpaneus principatum agebat, quando, bello commisso, Gothi, Romanis devictis, Oppii Sabini capite absciso, multa castella et civitates de parte Imperatoris invadentes publice deprædantur.	Oppius Sabinus was then in command of that province, succeeding {Fontejus} Agrippa {governor of Moesia, 69-70}, while Diurpaneus {i.e., Dacian king Duras-Diurpaneus, 69-86} held command over the Goths. Thereupon the Goths made war {A.D. 85; {actually the Dacians, not the Goths} and conquered the Romans, cut off the head of Oppius Sabinus, and invaded and boldly plundered many castles and cities belonging to the Emperor.
77	
Qua necessitate suorum, Domitianus cum omni virtute sua Illyricum properavit et totius paene rei publicae militibus, ductore Fusco praelato cum lectissimis viris, amnem Danubii, consertis navibus ad instar pontis, transmeare coepit super exercitum Diurpaneus.	In this plight of his countrymen Domitian hastened with all his might to Illyricum, bringing with him the troops of almost the entire empire. He sent Fuscus before him as his general with picked soldiers. Then joining boats together like a bridge, he started crossing the river Danube above the army of Diurpaneus.
78	
Tum Gothi haut segnes reperti arma capessunt primoque conflictu mox Romanos devincunt, Fuscoque duce extincto, divitias de castris militum spoliant, magnaue potiti per loca victoria, jam procures suos, quorum quasi fortuna vincebant, non puros homines, sed semideos, id est Ansis, vocaverunt.	But the Goths were on the alert. They took up arms and presently overwhelmed the Romans in the first encounter. They slew Fuscus, the commander, and plundered the soldiers' camp of its treasure {A.D. 86}. And because of the great victory they had won in this region, they thereafter called their leaders, by whose good fortune they seemed to have conquered, not mere men, but demigods, that is, Ansjus {"archangel-like supernatural beings"}.

Quorum genealogiam ut paucis percurram vel quis quo parente genitus est aut unde origo coepta, ubi finem effecit, absque invidia, qui legis, vera dicentem ausculta.	Their genealogy I shall run through briefly, telling the lineage of each and the beginning and the end of this line. And do thou, O reader, hear me without repining; for I speak truly.
XIV 79	
Horum ergo heroum, ut ipsi suis in fabulis referunt, primus fuit Gaut, qui genuit Hulmul.	Now the first of these heroes, as they themselves relate in their legends, was Gaut {= "The Goth" = Woðan "Leader of those who are woð" (in shamanic ecstasy), "Chief of Shamans"}, who begat Hulmul {perhaps error for *Humul = <i>Humli</i> , ancestor of the Danish kings (Saxo Grammaticus, &c.)}
Hulmul vero genuit Augis:	And Hulmul begat Augeis
at Augis genuit eum, qui dictus est Amal, a quo et origo Amalorum decurrit:	and Augeis begat him who was called Amal {"The Vigorous, Industrious"}, from whom the name of the Amals comes.
qui Amal genuit Isarnana:	This Amal begat Eisarnei {"Iron Man"}.
Isarnis autem genuit Ostrogotha:	Eisarnei moreover begat Austra-guta {"Radiant Goth"},
Ostrogotha autem genuit Hunwil:	and Austra-guta begat Hun-wilja {"Strong will"},
Hunwil item genuit Athal:	and Hun-wilja likewise begat Aþal {"Noble One"}.
Athal genuit Agiwulf et Odwulf:	Aþal begat Agi-wulf {"(Sword-)Edge-wolf"} and Auða-wulf {"Lucky Wolf"}.
Agiwulf autem genuit Ansila et Ediwulf, Wultwulf et Ermanaricum:	Now Agi-wulf begat Ansila {"Little Ansus" (= "godlet")} and Aipi-wulf {"Oath-wolf"}, Wulþ-wulf {"Magnificent-wolf"} and Áirmana-reik {"Mighty ruler"}.
Wultwulf vero genuit Walahrabns:	And Wulþ-wulf begat Wala-hrabn {"Favorite raven"}
Walarabns autem genuit Winithaharium:	and Wala-hrabn begat Winipa-harjis

	{ "Fighter of Wends" (a Slavic people) }.
Winithaharius quoque genuit Wandalaharium:	Winiþa-harjis moreover begat Wandala-harjis { "Fighter of Vandals" (an East-Germanic tribe) };
80	
Wandalaharius genuit Theudemmer et Walamer et Widimer:	Wandala-harjis begat Þiuði-mer { "People-famed," "Famous among peoples" } and Wala-mer { "Beloved and famous" } and Wiði-mer { "Forest-fame" };
Theudemmer genuit Theudericum:	and Þiuði-mer begat Þiuði-reik { "People-ruler" }.
Theudericus genuit Amalaswentham:	Þiuði-reik begat Amala-swinþo { "Amal strength" };
Amalaswenþa genuit Athalaricum et Mateswentham de Eutharico viro suo, cujus affinitas generis sic ad eam conjuncta est.	Amala-swinþo bore Aþala-reik { "Noble ruler" } and Maþa-swinþo { "Good strength" } to her husband Iuþa-reik { "Ruler of the Eudusians" (a tribe inhabiting <i>Jut</i> -land) }, whose race was thus joined to hers in kinship.
81	
Nam supra dictus Ermanaricus, filius Agiwulf, genuit Hunimundum:	For the aforesaid Aírmana-reik, the son of Agi-wulf, begat Huni-mund { "Powerful hand" },
Hunimundus autem genuit Thorismudum:	and Huni-mund begat Þáúris-moð { "Daring mood" }.
Thorismud vero genuit Beremud:	Now Þáúris-moð begat Baíri-moð { "Bear mood" },
Beremud autem genuit Widiricum:	Baíri-moð begat Wiði-reik { "Forest ruler" },
Widiricus item genuit Eutharicum,	and Wiði-reik likewise begat Iuþa-reik,
qui conjunctus Amalaswinthae genuit Athalaricum et Matheswintham,	who married Amala-swinþo { "Amal strength" } and bore Aþala-reik and Maþu-swinþo { "Good strength" }.
mortuoque in puerilibus annis Athalarico, Matheswinthae Witiges est copulatus, de	Aþala-reik died in the years of his childhood, and Maþa-swinþo married Weiti-gais

quo non suscepit liberum;	{ "Punishing spear" }, to whom she bore no child.
adductique simul a Belisario Constantinopolim:	Both of them were taken together by Belisarius { General under Emperor Justinian } to Constantinople.
et Witigi rebus excedente humanis, Germanus patricius, fratrueis Justiniani Imperatoris, eam in conubio sumens Patriciam Ordinariam fecit, de qua et genuit filium item Germanum nomine.	When Weiti-gais passed from human affairs, Germanus the patrician, a cousin of the Emperor Justinian, took Maþa-swinþo in marriage and made her a member of the patrician order. And of her he begat a son, also called Germanus.
Germano vero defuncto, ipsa vidua perseverare disponitur. Quomodo autem aut qualiter regnum Amalorum destructum est, loco suo, si Dominus jubaverit, edicemus.	But upon the death of Germanus, she determined to remain a widow. Now how and in what wise the kingdom of the Amals was overthrown we shall keep to tell in its proper place, if the Lord help us.
82	
Nunc autem ad id, unde digressum fecimus, redeamus doceamusque, quomodo ordo gentis, unde agimus, cursus sui metam explevit.	But let us now return to the point whence we made our digression and tell how the stock of this people of whom I speak reached the end of its course.
Ablabius enim historicus refert, quia ibi super limbum Ponti ubi eos diximus in Scythia commanere, <erat> pars eorum quae orientalem plagam tenebat, eisque praeerat Ostrogotha; utrum ab ipsius nomine, an a loco (id est orientali), dicti sunt Ostrogothae, residui vero Wisigothae (id est a parte occidua).	Now Ablabius the historian reports that in Scythia, where we have said that they were dwelling above an arm of the Pontic Sea, was a part of them that held the eastern portion, and their leader was Austra-guta; they were called Ostrogoths { Austra-gutans, "Shining Goths" (but mistaken as "Eastern Goths") }, either from his name or from the place (that is, "eastern"). But the rest were called Visigoths { Wisi-gutans, "Noble Goths" (but mistaken as "Western Goths") } (that is, the Goths of the western country).
<p style="text-align: center;">XV</p> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">83</p>	
Et quia jam superius diximus eos, transito Danubio, aliquantum temporis in Moesia Thraciaeque vixisse, ex eorum reliquiis fuit	As already said, they crossed the Danube and dwelt a little while in Moesia and Thrace. From the remnant of these came

et Maximinus Imperator post Alexandrum Mamaeae.	Maximinus {A.D. 235-238}, the Emperor succeeding {Marcus Aurelius Severus} Alexander {222-235} the son of Mamaea.
Nam, ut dicit Symmachus in quinto suae Historiae libro: Maximinus (inquiens), Caesare mortuo Alexandro, ab exercitu effectus est Imperator, ex infimis parentibus in Thracia natus, a patre Gotho nomine Micca, matre Alana, quae Ababa dicebatur.	For Symmachus relates it thus in the fifth book of his History, saying that upon the death of Caesar {Severus} Alexander, {Gajus Julus Verius} Maximinus {I Thrax} was made Emperor by the army; a man born in Thrace of most humble parentage, his father being a Goth named Mikka {"Biggie"}, and his mother a woman of the Alani called Ababa.
Is triennium regnans, quum in Christianos arma commoveret, imperium simul et vitam amisit.	He reigned three years and lost alike his empire and his life while making war on the Christians.
84	
Nam hic, Severo Imperatore regnante et natalem diem filii celebrante, post primam aetatem et rusticanam vitam, de pascuis in militiam venit.	Now after his first years spent in rustic life, he had come from his flocks to military service in the reign of the Emperor {Septimius} Severus {A.D. 193-211} and at the time when he was celebrating his son's birthday.
Princeps si quidem militares dederat ludos; quod cernens, Maximinus, quamvis semibarbarus adolescens, propositis praemiis patria lingua petiit ab Imperatore, ut sibi luctandi cum expertis militibus licentiam daret.	It happened that the Emperor was giving military games. When Maximinus saw this, although he was a semi-barbarian youth, he besought the Emperor in his native tongue to give him permission to wrestle with the trained soldiers for the prizes offered.
85	
Severus, admodum miratus magnitudinem formae - erat enim, ut fertur, statura ejus procera ultra octo pedes - jussit eum lixis corporis nexu contendere, ne quid a rudi homine militaribus viris eveniret injuriae.	Severus marveling much at his great size - for his stature, it is said, was more than eight feet {= 7'9" or 2.37 m} -, bade him contend in wrestling with the camp followers, in order that no injury might befall his soldiers at the hands of this wild fellow.
Tum Maximinus sedecim lixas tanta facilitate prostravit, ut vincendo singulos nullam sibi requiem per intercapedinem temporis daret.	Thereupon Maximinus threw sixteen attendants with such great ease that he conquered them one by one without taking any rest by pausing between the bouts.

Hic, captis praemiis, jussus est in militiam mitti, primaeque ei stipendia equestria fuere.	So then, when he had won the prizes, it was ordered that he should be sent into the army, and his first service was with the cavalry.
Tertia post haec die, quum Imperator prodiret ad campum, vidit eum exsultantem more barbarico, jussitque tribuno, ut eum coercitum ad Romanam imbueret disciplinam.	On the third day after this, when the Emperor went out to the field, he saw him coursing about in barbarian fashion and bade a tribune restrain him and teach him Roman discipline.
Ille vero, ubi de se intellexit Principem loqui, accessit ad eum, equitantemque praeire pedibus coepit.	But when he understood it was the Emperor who was speaking about him, he came forward and began to run ahead of him as he rode.
86	
Tum Imperator, equo ad lentum cursum calcaribus incitato, multos orbes huc atque illuc usque ad suam defatigationem variis deflexibus impedivit ac deinde ait illi: "Nunquid vis post cursum, Thracisce, luctare?" respondit: "Quantum libet, Imperator".	Then the Emperor spurred on his horse to a slow trot and handicapped him with many circles hither and thither and with various turns, until he himself was weary. And then he said to him, "Are you willing to wrestle now after your running, my little Thracian?" "As much as you like, O Emperor," he answered.
Ita Severus, ex equo desiliens, recentissimos militum cum eo decertari jussit.	So Severus leapt from his horse and ordered the freshest soldiers to wrestle with him.
At ille septem valentissimos juvenes ad terram elisit, ita ut antea nihil per intervalla respiraret, solusque a Caesare et argenteis praemiis et aureo torque donatus est; jussus deinde inter stipatores degere corporis Principalis.	But he threw to the ground seven very powerful youths, even as before, taking no breathing space between the bouts. So he alone was given prizes of silver and a golden necklace by Caesar. Then he was bidden to serve in the bodyguard of the Emperor.
87	
Post haec sub Antonino Caracalla ordines duxit, ac saepe famam factis extendens, plures militiae gradus centuriatumque strenuitatis suae pretium tulit. Macrino tamen postea in regno ingresso, recusavit militiam paene triennium, tribunatusque habens honorem numquam se oculis Macrini obtulit, indignum ducens ejus imperium, qui perpetrato facinore fuerat acquisitum.	After this he was an officer under {Marcus Aurelius} Antoninus Caracalla {211-217}, often increasing his fame by his deeds, and rose to many military grades and finally to the centurionship as the reward of his active service. Yet afterwards, when Macrinus {217-218} became Emperor, he refused military service for almost three years, and though he held the office of tribune, he never came into the presence of

	Macrinus, thinking his rule shameful because he had won it by committing a crime.
88	
Ad Elagabalum dehinc quasi ad Antonini filium revertens, tribunatum suum adiit et post hunc sub Alexandro Mamaeae contra Parthos mirabiliter dimicavit.	Then he returned to Ela-Gabalus {218-222}, viewing him as the son, so to speak, of Antoninus {Caracalla}, and took up his tribuneship. After Ela-Gabalus, he fought with marvelous success against the Parthians, under {Severus} Alexander {222-235}, the son of Mamaea.
Eoque Mogontiaci militari tumultu occiso, ipse, exercitus electione absque senatus consultu, effectus est Imperator, qui cuncta bona sua in persecutione Christianorum malo voto foedavit; occisusque Aquilejae a Pupieno, regnum reliquit Philippo.	When Alexander was slain in an uprising of the soldiers at Mainz, Maximinus himself was made Emperor by a vote of the army, without a decree of the senate. But he marred all his good deeds by persecuting the Christians in accordance with an evil vow and, being slain {238} by Pupienus {actually by his own soldiers} at Aquileja, left the kingdom to Philip {the Arab, 244-249; {actually left to Pupienus and Balbinus}}.
Quod nos idcirco huic nostro opusculo de Symmachi Historia mutuati sumus, quatenus gentem, unde agimus, ostenderemus ad regni Romani fastigium usque venisse.	These matters we have borrowed from the History of Symmachus for this our little book, in order to show that the race of which we speak attained to the very highest station in the Roman Empire.
Ceterum, causa exigit ut ad id, unde digressi sumus, ordine redeamus.	But our subject requires us to return in due order to the point whence we digressed.
<p style="text-align: center;">XVI</p> <p style="text-align: center;">89</p>	
Nam gens ista mirum in modum in ea parte qua versabatur, id est, Ponti in litore Scythiae soli, enituit, sine dubio tanta spatia tenens terrarum, tot sinus maris, tot fluminum cursus, sub cuius saepe dextera Wandalus jacuit, stetit sub pretio Marcomannus, Quadorum principes in servitutem redacti sunt.	Now the Gothic race gained great fame in the region where they were then dwelling, that is in the Scythian land on the shore of Pontus, holding undisputed sway over great stretches of country, many arms of the sea and many river courses. By their strong right arm the Vandals {= Wandalos, "Winding, Wending ones"} were often laid low, the Marko-mans {"Men of the march, the frontier"} held their footing

	by paying tribute and the princes of the Qaḏos {"the Bad"} were reduced to slavery.
Philippo namque ante dicto regnante Romanis - qui solus ante Constantinum Christianus cum Philippo ejusdem filio fuit, cujus et secundo anno regni Roma millesimum annum explevit - Gothi, ut assolet, subtracta sibi stipendia sua aegre ferentes, de amicis effecti sunt inimici.	Now when the aforesaid Philip {"the Arab," 244-249} - who, with his son Philip, was the only Christian emperor before Constantine {307-337} - ruled over the Romans, in the second year of his reign Rome completed its one thousandth year {A.D. 247}. He withheld from the Goths the tribute due them; whereupon they were naturally enraged and instead of friends became his foes.
Nam quamvis remoti sub regibus viverent suis, rei publicae tamen Romanae foederati erant et annua munera percipiebant.	For though they dwelt apart under their own kings, yet they had been allied to the Roman state and received annual gifts.
90	
Quid multa? Transiens tunc Ostrogotha cum suis Danubium, Moesiam Thraciasque vastavit.	And what more? Austra-guta and his men soon crossed the Danube and ravaged Moesia and Thrace.
Ad quem debellandum Decius senator a Philippo dirigitur.	Philip sent the senator Decius against him.
Qui veniens dum Getis nihil praevallet, milites proprios, exemptos a militia, fecit vitam privatam degere, quasi eorum neglectu Gothi Danubium transfretassent, factaque, utpote, in suis vindicta, ad Philippum revertitur.	And since he could do nothing against the Getae, he released his own soldiers from military service and sent them back to private life, as though it had been by their neglect that the Goths had crossed the Danube. Having thus inflicted on his soldiers what, namely, was just punishment, he returned to Philip.
Milites vero videntes se post tot labores militia pulsos, indignati ad Ostrogothae regis Gothorum auxilium confugerunt.	But when the soldiers found themselves expelled from the army after so many hardships, in their anger they had recourse to the protection of Austra-guta, king of the Goths.
91	
Qui excipiens eos eorumque verbis accensus mox trecenta milia suorum armata produxit ad bellum, adhibitis sibi Taifalis et HAsdingis nonnullis, sed et	He received them, was aroused by their words and presently led out three hundred thousand armed men, having as allies for this war some of the Taifali and Hazdingos

<p>Carporum tribus milibus, genus hominum ad bella nimis expeditum, qui saepe fuere Romanis infesti; quos tamen posthaec, imperante Diocletiano et Maximiano, Galerius Maximianus Caesar devicit et rei publicae Romanae subegit.</p>	<p>{ "men with long women's hair," "the Long-haired" } and also three thousand of the Carpi, a race of men very ready to make war and frequently hostile to the Romans. But in later times when Diocletian {Emperor of the East, 284-305} and Maximian {Emperor of the West, 285-305} were Emperors, the Caesar {= vice-emperor} Galerius Maximianus {293-305} conquered them and made them tributary to the Roman Empire.</p>
<p>His ergo addens Gothos et Peucinos ab insula Peucis, quae in ostio Danubii Ponto mergenti jacet, Argaithum et Gunthericum, nobilissimos suae gentis ductores, praefecit.</p>	<p>Besides these tribes, Austra-guta had Goths and Peukini from the island of Peuke, which lies in the mouths of the Danube where they empty into the Sea of Pontus. He placed in command Arg-aiðs {(perhaps) "Leadership oath," "Oath of command"} and Gunpi-reik {"Battle prince"}, the noblest leaders of his race.</p>
92	
<p>Qui, mox vadantes Danubium et secundo Moesiam populati, Marcianopolim, ejusdem patriae urbem famosam metropolim, aggrediuntur; diuque obsessam, accepta pecunia ab iis qui inerant, reliquerunt.</p>	<p>They speedily crossed the Danube, devastated Moesia a second time and attacked Marcianople {modern Preslav, Bulgaria}, the famed capital of that land. Yet after a long siege they departed, upon receiving money from the inhabitants.</p>
93	
<p>Et quia Marcianopolim nominavimus, libet aliqua de ejus situ breviter intimare.</p>	<p>Now since we have mentioned Marcianople, we may briefly relate a few matters in connection with its founding:</p>
<p>Nam hanc urbem Trajanus Imperator hac re, ut fertur, aedificavit, eo quod Marciae sororis suae puella, dum lavat in flumine illo quod nimiae limpiditatis saporisque in media urbe oritur, Potami cognomento, exindeque voluit aquam haurire, casu vas aureum quod ferebat in profundum decedit, metalli pondere praegravatum, longeque post imis emersit; quod certe non erat usitatum, aut vacuum sorberi aut certe</p>	<p>They say that the Emperor Trajan built this city for the following reason: While his sister Marcia's daughter was bathing in the stream called Potamus - a river of great clearness and purity that rises in the midst of the city - she wished to draw some water from it and by chance dropped into its depths the golden pitcher she was carrying. Yet though very heavy from its weight of metal, it emerged from the waves a long time</p>

semel voratum undis respuentibus enatare.	afterwards. It surely is not a usual thing for an empty vessel to sink; much less that, when once swallowed up, it should be cast up by the waves and float again.
His Trajanus sub admiratione compertis, fontique numinis quoddam inesse credens, conditam civitatem germanae suae nomine "Marcianopolim" nuncupavit.	Trajan marveled at hearing this and believed there was some divinity in the stream. So he built a city and called it Marcianople after the name of his sister.
XVII <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> 94	
Abhinc ergo, ut dicebamus, post longam obsidionem accepto praemio ditatus Geta recessit ad propria.	From this city, then, as we were saying, the Goths returned after a long siege to their own land, enriched by the ransom they had received.
Quem cernens Gepidarum natio subito ubique vincentem praedisque ditatum, invidia ducta, arma in parentes movit.	Now the race of the Gibiðos {"The Givers", teasingly misnamed as Gipidos, "The Slow, Dull ones"} was moved with envy when they saw them laden with booty and so suddenly victorious everywhere, and made war on their kinsmen.
Quomodo vero Getae Gepidaeque sint parentes, si quaeris, paucis absolvam. Meminisse debes me initio de Scandiae insulae gremio Gothos dixisse egressos cum Berich rege suo, tribus tantum navibus vectos ad ripam Oceani citerioris, id est Gothisc-andiam.	Should you ask how the Goths and Gibiðos are kinsmen, I can tell you in a few words. You surely remember that in the beginning I said the Goths went forth from the bosom of the island of Scandia with Baírika, their king, sailing in only three ships toward the hither shore of Ocean, namely to Gutisk-Andja.
95	
Quarum trium una navis, ut assolet, tardius nancta, nomen genti fertur dedisse; nam lingua eorum "pigra" <i>gepanta</i> dicitur.	One of these three ships proved to be slower than the others, as is usually the case, and thus is said to have given the tribe their name, for in their language <i>gipanta</i> means "sluggish."
Hinc factum est, ut paulatim et corrupte nomen eis ex convicio nasceretur " <i>Gepidae</i> ."	Hence it came to pass that gradually and by corruption the name " <i>Gibiðos</i> " was coined for them out of a term of reproach.
Nam sine dubio ex Gothorum prosapia et hi trahunt originem; sed quia, ut dixi, <i>gepanta</i> pigrum aliquid tardumque	For undoubtedly they too trace their origin from the stock of the Goths, but because, as I have said, <i>gipanta</i> means something slow

designat, pro gratuito convicio "Gepidarum" nomen exortum est, quod nec ipsum credo falsissimum: sunt etenim tardioris ingenii et graviores corporum velocitate.	and stolid, the word "Gibiðos" arose as a spontaneous slur. I do not believe the name itself is very far from wrong, for they are slow of thought and too sluggish for quick movement of their bodies.
96	
Hi ergo Gepidae, tacti invidia, dum Spesis provincia commanerent in insula Vistulae amnis vadibus circumacta, quam patrio sermone dicebant Gibid-ojos. Nunc eam, ut fertur, insulam gens Widiwaria incolit, ipsis ad meliores terras meantibus, qui Widiwarii ex diversis nationibus ac si in unum asylum collecti sunt et gentem fecisse noscantur.	These Gibiðos were then smitten by envy while they dwelt in the province of Spesis on an island surrounded by the shallow waters of the Vistula. This island they called, in the speech of their fathers, Gibið-aujos {"Gibid Waterlands"}; but it is now inhabited by the race of the Wiði-warii {= inhabitants of Wid-land, OE Wit-land}, since the Gibiðos themselves have moved to better lands. The Wiði-warii are gathered from various races into this one asylum, if I may call it so, and thus they form a nation.
97	
Ergo, ut dicebamus, Gepidarum rex Fastida, quietam gentem excitans, patrios fines per arma dilatavit.	So then, as we were saying, Fastida {"The Upholder," "Guardian"}, king of the Gibiðos, stirred up his quiet people to enlarge their boundaries by war.
Nam Burgundiones paene usque ad internecionem delevit aliasque nonnullas gentes perdomuit; Gothos quoque male provocans, consanguinitatis foedus prius importuna concertatione violavit.	He overwhelmed the Baúrgundjans {Burgundians, "The Fortress- dwellers"}, almost annihilating them, and conquered a number of other races also. He unjustly provoked the Goths, being the first to break the bonds of kinship by unseemly strife.
Superba admodum elatione jactatus, crescenti populo dum terras coepit addere, incolas patrios reddidit rariores.	He was greatly puffed up with vainglory, but in seeking to acquire new lands for his growing nation, he only reduced the numbers of his own countrymen.
98	
Is ergo, missis legatis ad Ostrogotham, cujus adhuc imperio tam Ostrogothae quam Wisigothae (id est, utrique ejusdem gentis populi) subjacebant, inclusum se montium queritans asperitate silvarumque densitate constrictum, unum poscens e	For he sent ambassadors to Ostrogotha, to whose rule Ostrogoths and Visigoths alike, that is, the two peoples of the same tribe, were still subject. Complaining that he was hemmed in by rugged mountains and dense forests, he demanded one of two things: that

duobus: ut aut bellum sibi aut locorum suorum spatia praepareret.	Ostrogotha should either prepare for war or give up part of his lands to them.
99	
Tunc Ostrogotha rex Gothorum, ut erat solidi animi, respondit legatis bellum se quidem tale horrere, durumque fore et omnino scelestum armis conflare cum propinquis, loca vero non cedere.	Then Ostrogotha, king of the Goths, who was a man of firm mind, answered the ambassadors that he did indeed dread such a war and that it would be a grievous and infamous thing to join battle with their kin, - but he would not give up his lands.
Quid multa? Gepidas in bella irruunt, contra quos, ne minor judicaretur, movet et Ostrogotha procinctum, conveniuntque ad oppidum Galtis, juxta quod currit fluvius Auha, ibique magna partium virtute certatum est, quippe quos in se et armorum et pugnandi similitudo commoverat; sed causa melior vivacitasque ingenii juvit Gothos.	And why say more? The Gibiðos hastened to take arms and Ostrogotha likewise moved his forces against them, lest he should seem a coward. They met at the town of Galtis {= perhaps the Transylvanian town of Galt on the Aluta river}, near which the river Auha flows, and there both sides fought with great valor; indeed the similarity of their arms and of their manner of fighting had turned them against their own men. But the better cause and their natural alertness aided the Goths.
100	
Inclinata denique parte Gepidarum, proelium nox diremit. Tunc, relicta suorum strage, Fastida rex Gepidarum properavit ad patriam, tam pudendis opprobriis humiliatus, quam fuerat elatione erectus. Redeunt victores Gothi, Gepidarum discessione contenti, suaeque in patria feliciter in pace versantur, usque dum eorum praevis existeret Ostrogotha.	Finally night put an end to the battle as a part of the Gibiðos were giving way. Then Fastida, king of the Gibiðos, left the field of slaughter and hastened to his own land, as much humiliated with shame and disgrace as formerly he had been elated with pride. The Goths returned victorious, content with the retreat of the Gibiðos, and dwelt in peace and happiness in their own land so long as Ostrogotha was their leader.
XVIII 101	
Post cujus decessum Cniwa, exercitum dividens in duas partes, nonnullos ad vastandam Moesiam dirigit, sciens eam neglegentibus principibus defensoribus destitutam; ipse vero cum LXX {septuaginta} milibus ad Eusciam, id est Novas, consedit.	After his death, Kniwa {"Knees" (perhaps childhood nickname, cf. Latin <i>Caligula</i> "Little Boots")} divided the army into two parts and sent some to waste Moesia, knowing that it was undefended through the neglect of their emperors. He himself with seventy thousand

	men encamped at Euscia, that is, Novae {= modern Novo-grad on the Danube}.
Unde a Gallo duce remotus, Nicopolim accedit, quae juxta Iatrum fluvium est constituta notissima; quam, devictis Sarmatis, Trajanus et fabricavit et appellavit Victoriae civitatem, ubi, Decio superveniente Imperatore, tandem Cniwa in Haemi partes, quae non longe aberant, recessit, unde, apparatu disposito, Philippopolim ire festinans.	When driven from this place by the general Gallus {= Gajus Vibius Trebonianus Gallus, governor of Moesia Inferior in 251, Emperor 251-253}, he approached Nicopolis {= modern Nikopol}, a very famous town situated near the Iatrus river {= modern Jantra, a tributary of the Danube}. This city Trajan built when he conquered the Sarmatians and named it the City of Victory. When the Emperor Decius {249-251} drew near, Kniwa at last withdrew to the regions of Haemus {= the Balkans}, which were not far distant. Thence he hastened to Philippopolis {modern Plovdiv, Bulgaria} with his materiel in good shape.
102	
Cujus secessum Decius Imperator cognoscens et ipsius urbi ferre subsidium gestiens, jugo Haemi montis transacto, ad Beroam venit.	When the Emperor Decius learned of his departure, he was eager to bring relief to his own city and, crossing Mount Haemus, came to Beroa {(in Thrace) also called Augusta Trajana, modern Stara-Zagora, Bulgaria}.
Ibique dum equos exercitumque lassum refoveret, ilico Cniwa cum Gothis in modum fulminis ruit, vastatoque Romano exercitu, Imperatorem cum pauculis qui fugere quiverant ad Eusciam rursus trans Alpes in Moesiam proturbavit, ubi tunc Gallus dux limitis cum plurima manu bellantium morabatur; collectoque tam exinde quam de Oesco exercitu, futuri belli se parat in aciem.	While he was resting his horses and his weary army in that place, all at once Kniwa and his Goths fell upon him like a thunderbolt. He cut the Roman army to pieces and drove the Emperor, with a few who had succeeded in escaping, across the Alps again to Euscia in Moesia, where Gallus was then stationed with a large force of soldiers as guardian of the frontier. Collecting an army from this region as well as from Oescus {= Ulpia Oescus, a city on the Danube, near the mouth of a river (now Iskur) of the same name}, he prepared for the conflict of the coming war.
103	

<p>Cniwa vero diu obsessam invadit Philippopolim, praedaeque potitus, Priscum ducem qui inerat sibi foederavit quasi cum Decio pugnaturum.</p>	<p>But Kniwa took Philippopolis after a long siege and then, laden with spoil, allied himself to Priscus, the commander in the city, to fight against Decius.</p>
<p>Venientesque ad conflictum, ilico Decii filium sagitta saucium crudeli funere confodiunt. Quod pater animadvertens licet ad confortandos animos militum fertur dixisse: "Nemo tristetur; perditio unius militis non est rei publicae deminutio." Tamen, paterno affectu non ferens, hostes invadit, aut mortem aut ultionem fili exposcens, veniensque ad Abritum, Moesiae civitatem, circumsaepus a Gothis et ipse exstinguitur, imperii finem vitaeque terminum faciens. Qui locus hodieque Decii Ara dicitur, eo quod ibi ante pugnam mirabiliter idolis immolasset.</p>	<p>In the battle that followed they quickly pierced the son of Decius with an arrow and cruelly slew him. The father saw this, and although he is said to have exclaimed, to cheer the hearts of his soldiers: "Let no one mourn; the death of one soldier is not a great loss to the republic," he was yet unable to endure it, because of his love for his son. So he rode against the foe, demanding either death or vengeance, and when he came to Abritus {= modern Razgrad}, a city of Moesia, he was himself cut off by the Goths and slain, thus making an end of his dominion and of his life. To this day that place is still called the Altar of Decius, because there he had offered strange sacrifices to idols before the battle.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">XIX 104</p>	
<p>Defuncto tunc Decio, Gallus et Volusianus regni potiti sunt Romanorum, quando et pestilens morbus, paene istius necessitatis consimilis, quam nos ante hos novem annos experti sumus, faciem totius orbis foedavit, supra modum tamen Alexandriam totiusque Aegypti loca devastans, Dionysio historico super hanc cladem lacrimabiliter exponente, quod et noster conscribit venerabilis martyr Christi et episcopus Cyprianus in libro, cujus titulus est "De Mortalitate."</p>	<p>Then upon the death of Decius, Gallus {251-253} and Volusianus {251-253; son of Gallus} succeeded to the Roman Empire. At this time a destructive plague, almost like death itself, such as we suffered nine years ago {i.e., in 542}, blighted the face of the whole earth and especially devastated Alexandria and all the land of Egypt. The historian Dionysius {Bishop of Alexandria, 248-265} gives a mournful account of it and Cyprian {Bishop of Carthage 248-258, martyred in the persecution started by Decius}, our own bishop and venerable martyr in Christ, also describes it in his book entitled "On Mortality."</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">105</p>	
<p>Tunc et Aemilianus quidam, Gothis saepe</p>	<p>At this time the Goths frequently ravaged</p>

ob Principum negligentiam Moesiam devastantibus ut vidit licere, nec <eos> a quoquam sine magno rei publicae dispendio removeri, similiter suas fortunas arbitratus posse venire, tyrannidem in Moesia arripuit, omnique manu militari ascita, coepit urbes et populos devastare.	Moesia, due to the neglect of the Emperors. When a certain Aemilianus {Emperor, 253 A.D.} saw that they were free to do this, and that they could not be dislodged by anyone without great cost to the republic, he thought that he too might be able to achieve fame and fortune. So he seized the rule in Moesia and, taking all the soldiers he could gather, began to plunder cities and people.
Contra quem intra paucos menses, dum multitudo apparatus accresceret, non minimum incomodum rei publicae parturivit; qui tamen in ipso paene nefario conatus sui initio exstinctus, et vitam et imperium quod inhiabat, amisit.	In the next few months, while an armed host was being gathered against him, he wrought no small harm to the state. Yet he died almost at the beginning of his evil attempt, thus losing at once both his life and the power he lusted after.
106	
Supra dicti vero Gallus et Volusianus Imperatores, quamvis vix biennio in imperio perseverantes ab hac luce migrarunt, tamen ipso biennio quo affuerunt, ubique pacati, ubique regnaverunt gratiosi - praeter quod unum eorum fortunae reputatum est, id est generalis morbus, sed hoc ab imperitis et calumniatoribus, qui vitam solent aliorum dente maledico lacerare.	Now though Gallus and Volusianus, the Emperors we have mentioned, departed this life after remaining in power for barely two years, yet during this space of two years which they spent on earth they reigned amid universal peace and favor. Only one thing was laid to their charge, namely the great plague. But this was an accusation made by ignorant slanderers, whose custom it is to wound the lives of others with their malicious bite.
Hi ergo mox imperium adepti sunt, foedus cum gente pepigerunt Gothorum.	Soon after they came to power they made a treaty with the race of the Goths.
Et nec longo intervallo, utrisque regibus occumbentibus, Gallienus arripuit principatum.	When both rulers were dead, it was no long time before Gallienus {253-268 A.D.} usurped the throne.
<p style="text-align: center;">XX</p> <p style="text-align: center;">107</p>	
Quo in omni lascivia resoluto, Respa et Weduco Thurwaroque, duces Gothorum, sumptis navibus, in Asiam transierunt, fretum Hellespontiacum transvecti, ubi, multas ejus provinciae civitates populati, opinatissimum illud Ephesiae Dianae templum, quod dudum dixeramus	While he was given over to luxurious living of every sort, Risa, Widuka {"Wooden- weapons man"; "Warrior of the wood spear"} and Bur-war {"Bold- wary"; "Alert daring"}, leaders of the Goths, took ship and sailed across the strait of the Hellespont to Asia. There they laid

Amazonas condidisse, igne succendunt.	waste many populous cities and set fire to the renowned temple of Diana at Ephesus {ca. 259}, which, as we said before, the Amazons built.
Partibusque Bithyniae delati, Calchedonam subverterunt, quam post Cornelius Avitus aliqua parte reparavit, quae hodieque, quamvis regiae urbis vicinitate congaudeat, signa tamen ruinarum suarum aliquanta ad indicium retinet posteritatis.	Being driven from the neighborhood of Bithynia, they destroyed Chalcedon {= modern Kadiköy, Turkey}, which Cornelius Avitus afterwards restored to some extent. Yet even today, though it is happily situated near the royal city {Constantinople}, it still shows some traces of its ruin as a witness to posterity.
108	
Hac ergo felicitate Gothi, qua intraverunt partes Asiae, praeda spoliisque potiti Hellespontiacum fretum retranseunt, vastantes in itinere suo Trojam Iliumque quae, vix a bello illo Agamemnoniaco aliquantulum se reparantes, rursus hostili mucrone deletae sunt.	After their success, the Goths recrossed the strait of the Hellespont, laden with booty and spoil, and returned along the same route by which they had entered the lands of Asia, sacking Troy and Ilium on the way. These cities, which had scarce recovered a little from the famous war with Agamemnon, were thus destroyed anew by the hostile sword.
Post Asiae ergo tale excidium, Thracia eorum experta est feritatem.	After the Goths had thus devastated Asia, Thrace next felt their ferocity.
Nam ibi ad radices Haemi montis et mari vicinam Anchialum civitatem aggressi mox adeunt - urbem, quam dudum Sardanapalus, rex Parthorum, inter limbum maris et Haemi radices locasset.	For they went thither and soon attacked Anchialus {"Near-the-Sea"}, a city at the foot of the Haemus and not far from the sea. Sardanapalus, king of the Parthians, had built this city long ago between an inlet of the sea and the base of Haemus. {Other authors say it was not this city in Moesia but <i>Anchiale</i> in Cilicia (in modern southern Turkey) that Sardanapalus (= Greek name for Assyrian king Assurbanipal, 669-627 B.C.) had founded.}
109	
Ibi ergo multis feruntur mansisse diebus aquarum calidarum delectati lavacris, quae ad duodecimum milliarium Anchialitanae civitatis sunt sitae, ab imo sui fontis ignei	There they are said to have stayed for many days, enjoying the baths of the hot springs which are situated at the twelfth milestone from the city of Anchiale. There they gush

scaturientes, et, inter reliqua totius mundi thermarum innumerabilium loca, omnino praecipuae et ad sanitatem infirmorum efficacissimae.	from the depths of their fiery source, and among the innumerable hot springs of the world they are esteemed as specially famous and efficacious for the healing the sick.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXI</p> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">110</p>	
Exinde ergo ad proprias sedes regressi, post haec a Maximiano Imperatore rediguntur in auxilium Romanorum contra Parthos rogati, ubi, datis auxiliariis, omnino fideliter decertati sunt.	After these events, the Goths had already returned home when they were summoned at the request of the Emperor Maximian {Gajus Galerius Valerius Maximianus, Co-Emperor (first Caesar, then Augustus) of the East, 293-311} to aid the Romans against the Parthians. They fought for him faithfully, serving as auxiliaries.
Sed postquam Caesar Maximinus paene cum eorum solacio Narseum, regem Persarum, Saporis Magni nepotem, fugasset, ejusque omnes opes simulque uxores et filios depraedasset, Achilleumque in Alexandria Diocletianus superasset, et Maximianus Herculus in Africa Quinque-Gentianos attrivisset, pacem rei publicae nacti, coeperunt quasi Gothos neglegere.	But after Caesar Maximian {293-305} by their aid had routed {298} Narses, king of the Persians, the grandson of Sapor the Great, taking as spoil all his possessions, together with his wives and his sons; and when Diocletian {Emperor (Augustus), 284-305} had conquered {297} Achilleus in Alexandria; and Maximianus Herculus {Marcus Aurelius Valerius Maximianus, Co-Emperor (Augustus) of the West, 285-305, whose divine patron was Hercules} had broken {297} the FivePeoples { <i>Quinque-Gentiani</i> , Latinized from Greek <i>Penta-Politani</i> } in Africa, thus winning peace for the empire - they began rather to neglect the Goths.
<p style="text-align: center;">111</p>	
Nam sine ipsos dudum contra quasvis gentes Romanus exercitus difficile decertatus est. Apparet namque frequenter, quomodo invitabantur sic:	Now it had long been a hard matter for the Roman army to fight against any nations whatsoever without them. This is evident from the way in which the Goths were so frequently called upon.
ut et sub Constantino rogati sunt et contra cognatum ejus Licinium arma tulerunt;	Thus they were also summoned by Constantine {I; co-emperor (Caesar,

eumque devictum et in Thessalonica clausum, privatum imperio, Constantini victoris gladio trucidarunt.	then Augustus) of the West 306-324, then sole emperor 324-337} to bear arms against his kinsman Licinius {co-emperor (Augustus) of the East, 308-324}. Later, when he was vanquished and shut up in Thessalonica and deprived of his power, they slew him with the sword of Constantine the victor.
--	---

112

Nam et ut famosissimam et Romae aemulam in suo nomine conderet civitatem, Gothorum interfuit operatio, qui, foedere inito cum Imperatore, quadraginta suorum milia illi in solacium contra gentes varias obtulere; quorum et numerus et militia usque ad praesens in re publica nominantur, id est Foederati. Tunc etenim sub Ariarici et HAorici regum suorum florebant imperio. Post quorum decessum successor regni exstitit Geberich, virtute et nobilitate eximius.	In like manner it was the aid of the Goths that enabled him to build the famous city that is named after him, the rival of Rome, inasmuch as they entered into a truce with the Emperor and furnished him forty thousand men to aid him against various peoples. This body of men, namely, the Allies, and the service they rendered in war are still spoken of in the land to this day. Now at that time they prospered under the rule of their kings Arja-reik {"Noble ruler"} and Hauh-reik {"High ruler"}. Upon their death Giba-reik {"Giving ruler," "Bestowing ruler"} appeared as successor to the throne, a man renowned for his valor and noble birth.
--	--

XXII

113

Nam hic Hilderith patre natus, avo Owida, proavo Nidada, gloriam generis sui factis illustribus exaequavit.	For his father was Hildi-reð {"Battle strategist"}, his grandfather Owiða {(meaning unclear; perhaps = *Kniwa "Knees" or *Ogiða "Feared one"?)}, and his great-grandfather Neipaða {"Antagonist," "Belligerent one"}; and by his illustrious deeds he equaled the glory of his race.
Primitias regni sui mox in Wandalicam gentem extendere cupiens <erat> contra Wisimar eorum regem, qui HASdingorum stirpe <natus>, quae inter eos eminet, genusque indicat bellicosissimum,	Soon he sought to extend the initial boundaries of his reign at the expense of the race of the Vandals and Wisi-marhs {"Noble horse"}, their king. This Wisi-marhs was of the stock of the Hazdingos

Dexippo historico referente, qui eos ab Oceano ad nostrum limitem vix in anni spatio pervenisse testatur prae nimia terrarum immensitate.	{ "the men with women's-length hair," "the Long-haired" }, which is eminent among them and indicates a most warlike descent, as Dexippus the historian { from Athens, 3rd century A.D. } relates. He states furthermore that by reason of the great extent of their country they could scarcely come from the ocean to our frontier in a year's time.
Quo tempore erant in eo loco manentes, ubi nunc Gepidae sedent, juxta flumina Marisia, Miliare et Gilpil et Grisia, qui omnes supra dictos excedit.	At that time they dwelt in the land where the Gibiðos { "The Givers", spitefully misnamed Gipidos, "The Slow, Dull ones" } now live, near the rivers Marisia { tributary of the Danube }, Miliare, Gilpil and the Grisia { a river in modern Hungary }, which exceeds in size all previously mentioned.
114	
Erant namque illis tunc ab oriente Gothus, ab occidente Marcomannus, a septentrione Ermundurus, a meridie Histrum, qui et Danubius dicitur.	They then had on the east the Goths, on the west the Marko-mans { "Men of the march, the frontier" }, on the north the Aírmun-duros { "Mighty (and) bold ones" } and on the south the Hister, which is also called the Danube.
Hic ergo Wandalis commorantibus bellum indictum est a Geberich rege Gothorum ad litus praedicti amnis Marisiae, ubi nec diu certatum est ex aequali, sed mox ipse rex Wandalorum Wisimar magna cum parte gentis suae prosternitur.	At the time when the Vandals were dwelling in this region, war was begun against them by Giba-reik, king of the Goths, on the shore of the aforementioned river Marisia. Here the battle raged for a little while on equal terms. But soon Wisi-marhs himself, the king of the Vandals, was laid low, together with the greater part of his people.
115	
Geberich vero Gothorum ductor eximius, superatis depraedatisque Wandalis, ad propria loca, unde exierat, remeavit; tunc perpauca Wandali, qui evasissent, collecta imbellium suorum manu, infortunatam patriam relinquentes, Pannoniam sibi a Constantino Principe petierunt, ibique per LX { sexaginta } annos plus minus	When Giba-reik, the famous leader of the Goths, had conquered and spoiled the Vandals, he returned to his own place whence he had come. Then the remnant of the Vandals who had escaped, collecting a band of those of their folk who were unwarlike, left their ill-fated country and asked the Emperor Constantine for Pannonia

sedibus locatis, imperatorum decretis ut incolae famulabantur.	{(A.D. 334)}. Here they made their home for about sixty years and obeyed the commands of the emperors like subjects.
Unde jam post longum a Stilicone magistro militum et ex-consule atque patricio invitati Gallias occupaverunt, ubi finitimos depraedantes non adeo fixas sedes habuerunt.	A long time afterward they were summoned thence by Stilika {"The Stealer"}, Master of the Soldiery, Ex-Consul and Patrician, and took possession of Gaul. Here they plundered their neighbors and had far less any settled place of abode.
XXIII 116	
Nam Gothorum rege Geberich rebus humanis excedente, post temporis aliquod Ermanaricus nobilissimus Amalorum in regno successit, qui multas et bellicosissimas Arctoi - undecim - gentes perdomuit suisque parere legibus fecit. Quem merito nonnulli Alexandro Magno comparavere majores.	Soon Giba-reik, king of the Goths, departed from human affairs and Áirmana-reik {"Mighty ruler"}, noblest of the Amalos {"The Vigorous, Industrious"}, succeeded to the throne. He subdued many - eleven - warlike peoples of the north and made them obey his laws, and some of our ancestors have justly compared him to Alexander the Great.
Habebat siquidem, quos domuerat, Golthescytha Thiudos in Aunxis, Wasinabroncas, Merens, Mordens, Imniscaris, Rogas, Tadzans, Athaul, Navego, Bubegenas, Coldas.	Among the tribes he conquered {(ca. 351-376)} were the Gothi-Scytha Þiudos {"The Gothic Čjudi people"} in Aunxeis {"in Aunuksen-maa," i.e., of Aunus (Russian Olónetz), an area of Greater Karelia, bordering Finland & Russia, northwest of St. Petersburg in Russia.}, the Wasinabroncae, Merjans, Mordjans, Imniscareis {"The Čeremisi people"}, Rogas, Tadzans, Apaul, Nawego, Bubegenae and Coldae.
117	
Sed quum tantorum servitio clarus haberetur, non passus est nisi et gentem Erulorum, quibus praeerat Alaricus, magna ex parte trucidatam, reliquam suae subigeret dicioni.	But though famous for his conquest of so many races, he gave himself no rest until he had slain the majority in battle and then reduced to his sway the remainder of the tribe of the Áirulos {"Earls," "Men"}, whose chief was Ala-reik {"All-ruler"}.
Nam praedicta gens, Ablabio historico referente, juxta Maeotidim paludem	Now the aforesaid race, as the historian Ablabius tells us, dwelt near the Sea of Asov

inhabitans in locis stagnantibus, quas Graeci <i>hele</i> vocant, HEluri nominati sunt: gens quanto velox, eo amplius superbissima.	in marshy places which the Greeks call <i>heloi</i> {"low ground by rivers, marsh-meadows"}; hence they were named Heluri {misspelling for <i>Eruli</i> (Aírulos)}. They were a people swift of foot, and on that account were the more swollen with pride.
118	
Nulla siquidem erat tunc gens, quae non levem armaturam in acie sua ex ipsis eligeret.	For there was at that time no race that would not have chosen from them its light-armed troops for battle.
Sed quamvis velocitas eorum ab aliis - crebro - bellantibus evagaretur, Gothorum tamen stabilitati subjacuit et tarditati; fecitque causa fortunae, ut et ipsi inter reliquas gentes Gothorum regi Ermanarico servirent.	But though their quickness often outmaneuvered others who made war upon them, yet they were overthrown by the steadiness and slowness of the Goths; and the lot of fortune brought it to pass that they, as well as the other tribes, had to serve Aírmana-reik, king of the Goths.
119	
Post Herulorum caedem item Ermanaricus in Wenethos arma commovit, qui, quamvis armis despecti, sed numerositate pollentes, primo resistere conabantur. Sed nihil valet multitudo imbellium, praesertim ubi et deus permittit et multitudo armata advenerit. Nam hi, ut in initio expositionis vel catalogo gentium dicere coepimus, ex una stirpe exorti, tria nunc nomina ediderunt, id est Wenethi, Antes, Sclaveni; qui quamvis nunc, ita facientibus peccatis nostris, ubique desaeviunt, tamen tunc omnes Ermanarici imperiis servierunt.	After the slaughter of the Eruli, Ermanaric also took arms against the Winīpos {"Wends," a Slavic people}. This people, though despised in war, was strong in numbers and at first tried to resist him. But a multitude of cowards is of no avail, particularly when God permits an armed multitude to attack them. These people, as we started to say at the beginning of our account or catalogue of nations, though offshoots from one stock, have now three names, that is, Winīpos, Antes and Sclaveni {= Slavs}. Though they now rage in war far and wide, in punishment for our sins, yet at that time they were all obedient to Ermanaric's commands.
120	
Aestorum quoque similiter nationem, quae longinquissimam ripam Oceani Germanici insidet, idem ipse prudentia et virtute subegit, omnibusque Scythiae et Germaniae nationibus ac si propriis	This ruler also subdued by his wisdom and might the race of the Aesti {Germanic name for the Balts; "Aesti" ("the Revered, Respected ones") is the ancient root of " <i>Est</i> -onia", German

laboribus [= praediis] imperavit.	" <u>Est</u> -land"}, who dwell on the farthest shore of the German Ocean {= the Baltic Sea}, and ruled all the nations of Scythia and Germany like their own landed estates.
XXIV <hr style="width: 10%; margin: auto;"/> 121	
Post autem non longi temporis intervallum, ut refert Orosius, Hunnorum gens omni ferocitate atrocior exarsit in Gothos. Nam hos, ut refert antiquitas, ita exstitisse comperimus:	But after a short space of time, as Orosius relates, the race of the Huns, fiercer than ferocity itself, flamed forth against the Goths. We learn from old traditions that their origin was as follows:
Filimer, rex Gothorum et Gadarici Magni filius, qui post egressum Scandiae insulae jam quinto loco tenens principatum Getarum - qui et terras Scythicas cum sua gente introisse superius a nobis dictus est -, repperit in populo suo quasdam magas mulieres, quas patrio sermone "haliurunnas" is ipse cognominat, easque habens suspectas, de medio sui proturbat longeque ab exercitu suo fugatas in solitudinem coegit errare.	Fili-mers {" Very famous "}, king of the Goths, son of Gada-reik {" Comrade-prince "} the Great, who was the fifth in succession to hold the rule of the Getae after their departure from the island of Scandia - and who, as we have said, entered the land of Scythia with his tribe, - found among his people certain witches, whom he called in his native tongue "halju-runnos" {" hell-runners, " i.e., female shamans who made psychic excursions to the realm of the dead}. Suspecting these women, he expelled them from the midst of his race and compelled them to wander in solitary exile afar from his army.
122	
Quas spiritus immundi per heremum vagantes quum vidissent et earum se complexibus in coitu miscuissent, genus hoc ferocissimum ediderunt, quae fuit primum inter paludes, minutum, taetrum atque exile quasi hominum genus, nec alia voce notum nisi quod humani sermonis imaginem assignabat. Tali igitur Hunni stirpe creati, Gothorum finibus advenerunt.	There the unclean spirits, who beheld them as they wandered through the wilderness, gave themselves to the women's embraces in sexual intercourse and produced this savage race, which dwelt at first in the swamps - a stunted, hideous and puny tribe, scarcely human, unrecognizable by any language save something which bore only slight resemblance to human speech. Such was the descent of the Huns who came to the country of the Goths.
123	
Quorum natio saeva, ut Priscus historicus refert, Maeotidae paludis ulteriorem ripam	This cruel tribe, as Priscus the historian relates, settled on the farther bank of the

insedit, venatione tantum nec alio labore experta, nisi quod, postquam crevisset in populos, fraudibus et rapinis vicinarum gentium quietem conturbavit.	marshy Sea of Asov. They were skilled in hunting but had no experience in any other art. After they had grown into a nation, they disturbed the peace of neighboring races by theft and rapine.
Hujus ergo gentis, ut assolet, venatores, dum in ulterioris Maeotidis ripa venationes inquirunt, animadvertunt, quomodo ex improvise cerva se illis obtulit, ingressaque paludem, nunc progrediens nunc subsistens, indicem viae se praebuit.	At one time, while hunters of their tribe were as usual seeking for game on the farthest edge of the Sea of Asov, they saw a doe unexpectedly appear to their sight and enter the swamp, presenting itself as guide of the way; now advancing and again standing still.
124	
Quam secuti venatores paludem Maeotidam, quam imperviam ut pelagus aestimabant, pedibus transierunt. Mox quoque Scythica terra ignotis apparuit, cerva disparuit. Quod, credo, spiritus illi, unde progeniem trahunt, ad Scytharum invidiam egerunt.	The hunters followed and crossed on foot the Asovian swamp, which they had supposed was as impassable as the sea. Presently the unknown land of Scythia disclosed itself to the unsuspecting men and the doe disappeared. Now in my opinion the evil spirits, from whom the Huns are descended, did this from envy of the Scythians.
125	
Illi vero, qui praeter Maeotidem alium mundum esse penitus ignorabant, admiratione ducti terrae Scythicae et, ut sunt sollertes, iter illud nulli antea aetati notissimum divinitus sibi ostensum rati, ad suos redeunt, rei gestum edocent, Scythiam laudant, persuasaeque gente sua, via, quam cerva indice didicerant, ad Scythiam properant, et quantoscunque prius in ingressu Scytharum obvios habuerunt, litavere victoriae, reliquos perdomitos subegerunt.	And the Huns, who had been wholly ignorant that there was another world beyond the Sea of Asov, were now filled with admiration for the Scythian land. As they were quick of mind, they believed that this path, utterly unknown to any age of the past, had been divinely revealed to them. They returned to their tribe, gave them a full account of the event, praised Scythia and persuaded the people to hasten thither along the way they had found by the guidance of the doe. They sacrificed to Victory everyone they found in their path in their initial entry into Scythia. The remainder they conquered and made subject to themselves.
126	
Nam mox ingentem illam paludem transierunt, ilico Alpidzuros, Alcildzuros, Itimaros, Tuncarsos et Boiscos, qui ripae istius Scythiae insedebant, quasi quaedam	Like a tornado of nations they swept across the great swamp and at once fell upon the Alpidzuri, Alcildzuri {= the <i>Amildzuri</i> mentioned by Priscus}, Itimari,

turbo gentium rapuerunt. Alanos quoque pugna sibi pares, sed humanitate, victu formaque dissimiles, frequenti certamine fatigantes, subjugaverunt.	Tuncarsi {= the <i>Tonosures</i> of Priscus} and Boisci, who bordered on that part of Scythia. The Alani also, who were their equals in battle, but unlike them in civilization, manners and appearance, they exhausted by their incessant attacks and subdued.
127	
Nam et quos bello forsitan minime superabant, vultus sui terrore nimium pavorem ingerentes, terribilitate fugabant, eo quod erat eis species pavenda nigredinis et velut quaedam, si dici fas est, informis offa, non facies, habensque magis puncta quam lumina. Quorum animi fiduciam torvus prodit aspectus, qui etiam in pignora sua primo die nata desaeviunt. Nam maribus ferro genas secant, ut ante quam lactis nutrimenta percipiant, vulneris cogantur subire tolerantiam.	For by the terror of their features they inspired great fear in those whom perhaps they did not really surpass in war. They made their foes flee in horror because their swarthy aspect was fearful, and they had, if I may call it so, a sort of hideous lump, not a head, with pinholes rather than eyes. Their audacity is evident in their threatening appearance, and they are beings who are cruel to their children on the very day they are born. For they cut the cheeks of the males with a sword, so that before they receive the nourishment of milk they must learn to endure wounds.
128	
Hinc imberbes senescunt, et sine venustate ephebi sunt, quia facies ferro sulcata tempestivam pilorum gratiam cicatricibus absumit. Exigui quidem forma, sed argutis motibus expediti et ad equitandum promptissimi, scapulis latis, et ad arcus sagittasque parati, firmis cervicibus et superbia semper erectis. Hi vero sub hominum figura vivunt beluina saevitia.	Hence they grow old beardless and their young men are without comeliness, because a face furrowed by the sword spoils by its scars the mature beauty of a beard. They are short in stature, quick in bodily movement, alert horsemen, broad shouldered, ready in the use of bow and arrow, and have firm-set necks which are ever erect in pride. Though they have human shape, they live with the savagery of beasts.
129	
Quod genus expeditissimum multarumque nationum grassatorem Getae ut viderunt, pavescunt, suoque cum rege deliberant, qualiter tali se hosti subducant.	When the Getae beheld this active race that had invaded many nations, they took fright and consulted with their king how they might escape from such a foe.
Nam Ermanaricus, rex Gothorum, licet, ut superius retulimus, multarum gentium exstiterat triumphator, de Hunnorum tamen adventu dum cogitat,	Now although Airmana-reik {"Mighty ruler"}, king of the Goths, was the conqueror of many tribes, as we have said

Rosomonorum gens infida, quae tunc inter alias illi famulatum exhibebat, tali eum nanciscitur occasione decipere.	above, yet while he was deliberating on this invasion of the Huns, the treacherous tribe of the Rusmunans {"the Reddish ones," "False ones"}, who at that time were among those who owed him their homage, took this chance to catch him unawares.
Dum enim quandam mulierem Sunilda nomine ex gente memorata pro marito fraudulento discessu rex furore commotus equis ferocibus illigatam incitatisque cursibus per diversa divelli praecepisset, fratres ejus Sarus et HAMMIUS, germanae obitum vindicantes, Ermanarici latus ferro petierunt; quo vulnere saucius, aegram vitam corporis imbecillitate contraxit.	For when the king had given orders that a certain woman of the tribe I have mentioned, Sun-hilda {"Judgement-battle," "Decisive battle"} by name, should be bound to wild horses and torn apart by driving them at full speed in opposite directions (for he was roused to fury by her husband's treachery to him), her brothers Sarws {"Man of weapons"} and Hamjis {"Armed one"} came to avenge their sister's death and plunged a sword into Airmana-reik's side. Enfeebled by this blow, he dragged out a miserable existence in bodily weakness.
130	
Quam adversam ejus valitudinem captans Balamber rex Hunnorum in Ostrogothorum partem movit procinctum, a quorum societate jam Wisigothae quadam inter se contentione sejuncti habebantur.	Balamber, king of the Huns, took advantage of his ill health to move a strike force into the country of the Ostrogoths, from whom the Visigoths were already separated because of some dispute.
Inter haec Ermanaricus, tam vulneris dolorem quam etiam Hunnorum incursus non ferens, grandaevus et plenus dierum centesimo decimo anno vitae suae defunctus est.	Meanwhile Airmana-reik, who was unable to endure either the pain of his wound or the inroads of the Huns, died full of days at the great age of one hundred and ten years.
Cujus mors occasionem dedit Hunnis praevalere Gothis illis, quos dixeramus in orientali plaga sedere et Ostrogothas nuncupari.	The fact of his death enabled the Huns to prevail over those Goths who, as we have said, dwelt in the East and were called Ostrogoths.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXV (The Divided Goths: Visigoths)</p>	
131	
Wisigothae, id est, illi alii eorum socii et occidui soli cultores, metu parentum	The Visigoths, who were their other allies and inhabitants of the western country, were

<p>exterriti, quidnam de se propter gentem Hunnorum deliberarent, ambigebant, diuque cogitantes tandem communi placito legatos in Romaniam direxerunt ad Valentem Imperatorem fratrem Valentiniani Imperatoris senioris, ut, partem Thraciae sive Moesiae si illis traderet ad colendum, ejus legibus viverent ejusque imperiis subderentur.</p>	<p>terrified as their kinsmen had been, and knew not how to plan for safety against the race of the Huns. After long deliberation by common consent they finally sent ambassadors into Roman-land to the Emperor Valens {Emperor of the East, 364-378}, brother of Valentinian {Emperor of the West, 364-375}, the elder Emperor, to say that if he would give them part of Thrace or Moesia to keep, they would live under his laws and be subject to his commands.</p>
<p>Et, ut fides uberior illis haberetur, promittunt se, si doctores linguae eorum donaverit, fieri Christianos.</p>	<p>That he might have greater confidence in them, they promised to become Christians, if he would give them teachers who spoke their language.</p>
132	
<p>Quo Valens comperto mox gratulabundus annuit, quod ultro petere voluisset, susceptosque in partibus Moesiae Getas quasi murum regni sui contra ceteras statuit gentes.</p>	<p>When Valens learned this, he gladly and promptly granted what he had himself intended to ask. He received the Getae into the region of Moesia and placed them there as a wall of defense for his kingdom against other tribes.</p>
<p>Et quia tunc Valens Imperator, Arrianorum perfidia saucius, nostrarum partium omnes ecclesias obturasset, suae partis fautores ad illos dirigit praedicatores, qui venientes rudibus et ignaris ilico perfidiae suae virus infundunt.</p>	<p>And since at that time the Emperor Valens, who was infected with the Arian perfidy, had closed all the churches of our party, he sent as preachers to them those who favored his sect. They came and straightway filled a rude and ignorant people with the poison of their heresy.</p>
<p>Sic quoque Wisigothae a Valente Imperatore Arriani potius quam Christiani effecti.</p>	<p>Thus the Emperor Valens made the Visigoths Arians rather than Christians.</p>
133	
<p>De cetero tam Ostrogothis quam Gepidis parentibus suis pro affectionis gratia evangelizantes <{Insertio a Landolfo, saeculo decimo: } per Wulfilam episcopum suum Arianum, qui litteras gothicas primus invenit et scripturas in eorum linguas (<i>sic</i>) divinas convertit>,</p>	<p>Moreover, from the love they bore them, they preached the gospel both to the Ostrogoths and to their kinsmen the Gibiðos <{Insertion by Landolf, 10th century: } through Wulfila {"Little Wolf"} their Arian bishop, who first invented the Gothic alphabet and translated</p>

hujus perfidiae culturam edocentes, omnem ubique linguae hujus nationem ad culturam hujus sectae invitaverunt.	the Scriptures into their divine languages (<i>sic</i>)>, teaching them to reverence this heresy, and they invited all people of their speech everywhere to attach themselves to this sect.
Ipsi quoque, ut dictum est, Danubium transmeantes, Daciam ripensem, Moesiam Thraciasque permissu Principis insederunt.	They themselves as we have said, crossed the Danube and settled Dacia Ripensis, Moesia and Thrace by permission of the Emperor.
XXVI <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> 134	
Quibus evenit, ut assolet genti necdum bene loco fundatae, penuria famis, coeperuntque primates eorum et duces, qui regum vice illis praeerant - id est Fritigernus, Alatheus et Safrac -, exercitus inopiae condolare negotiationemque a Lupicino Maximoque, Romanorum ducibus, expetere.	Soon famine and want came upon them, as often happens to a people not yet well settled in a country. Their princes and the leaders who ruled them in place of kings, that is Friþi-gairn {"Peace-yearning"}, Ala-þiw {"General-minister," lit. "All-servant"} and Saba-rak {(perhaps) "Clearsighted narrator"} , began to lament the plight of their army and begged Lupicinus and Maximus, the Roman commanders, to open a market.
Verum quid non "auri sacra fames" (Virgilius, Aeneidis 3,56) compellit acquiescere? Coeperunt duces, avaritia compellente, non solum ovium boumque carnes, verum etiam canum et immundorum animalium morticina eis pro magno contradere, adeo, ut quodlibet mancipium uno pane aut decem libris carnis mercarentur.	But to what will not the "cursed lust for gold" (Vergil, Aeneid 3,56) compel men to assent? The generals, swayed by avarice, sold them at a high price not only the flesh of sheep and oxen, but even the carcasses of dogs and unclean animals, to the point that a slave would be bartered for a loaf of bread or ten pounds of meat.
135	
Sed jam mancipiis et supellectile deficientibus, filios eorum avarus mercator victus necessitate exposcit. Haut enim secus parentes faciunt, saluti suorum pignorum providentes - faciliusque deliberant ingenuitatem perire quam vitam, dum misericorditer alendus quis venditur quam moriturus servatur.	When the Goths ran out of slaves and household items, the greedy trader demanded their sons in return for the necessities of life. And the parents consented even to this, in order to provide for the safety of their children, arguing that it was better to lose liberty than life; and indeed it is better that one be sold, if he will be mercifully fed, than that he should be kept free only to die.

Contigit etenim illo sub tempore aerumnoso, Lupicinus ut ductor Romanorum Fritigernum Gothorum regulum in convivium invitaret dolumque ei - ut post exitus docuit - moliretur.	Now it came to pass in that troublous time that Lupicinus, the Roman general, invited Friþi-gaírn, a chieftain of the Goths, to a feast and, as the event revealed, devised a plot against him.
136	
Sed Fritigernus doli nescius cum paucorum comitatu ad convivium veniens, dum intus in praetorio epularetur, clamorem miserorum morientium audit; nam in alia parte socios ejus clausos dum milites, ducis sui jussu, trucidare conarentur, et vox morientium duriter emissa jam suspectis auribus intonaret, ilico aperte dolum cognoscens, Fritigernus, evaginato gladio, e convivio non sine magna temeritate velocitateque egreditur suosque socios ab imminente morte ereptos ad necem Romanorum instigat.	But Friþi-gaírn, thinking no evil, came to the feast with a few followers. While he was dining in the praetorium he heard the dying cries of his ill-fated men, for, by order of the general, the soldiers were slaying his companions who were shut up in another part of the house. The loud cries of the dying fell upon ears already suspicious, and Friþi-gaírn at once perceived the treacherous trick. He drew his sword and with great courage dashed quickly from the banqueting-hall, rescued his men from their threatening doom and incited them to slay the Romans.
137	
Qui nancti occasionem votivam, elegerunt viri fortissimi in bello magis quam in fame deficere, et ilico in ducum Lupicini et Maximi armantur occisionem.	Thus these valiant men gained the chance they had longed for - to be free to die in battle rather than to perish of hunger - and immediately took arms to kill the generals Lupicinus and Maximus.
Illa namque dies Gothorum famem Romanorumque securitatem ademit, coeperuntque Gothi jam non ut advenae et peregrini, sed ut cives et domini possessoribus imperare totasque partes septentrionales usque ad Danubium suo jure tenere.	Thus that day put an end to the famine of the Goths and the safety of the Romans, for the Goths no longer as strangers and pilgrims, but as citizens and lords, began to rule the inhabitants and to hold in their own right all the northern country as far as the Danube.
138	
Quod comperiens in Antiochia Valens Imperator mox, armato exercitu, in Thraciarum partes egreditur; ubi, lacrimabili bello commisso, vincentibus Gothis, in quoddam praedium juxta Hadrianopolim saucius ipse refugiens, ignorantibusque quod Imperator in tam vili casula delitesceret Gothis, igneque, ut assolet saevienti inimico, supposito, cum	When the Emperor Valens heard of this at Antioch, he made ready an army at once and set out for the country of Thrace. Here a grievous battle took place {378 August 9} and the Goths prevailed. The Emperor himself was wounded and fled to a farm near Adrianople {modern Edirne, northernmost European Turkey}.

regali pompa crematus est - haut secus quam Dei prorsus iudicio, ut ab ipsis igne combureretur, quos ipse veram fidem petentes in perfidiam declinasset ignemque caritatis ad gehennae ignem detorsisset.	The Goths, not knowing that an emperor lay hidden in so poor a hut, set fire to it (as an enraged foe commonly does), and thus he was cremated in royal splendor. Plainly it was a direct judgment of God that he should be burned with fire by the very men whom he had perfidiously led astray when they sought the true faith, twisting the flame of love into the fire of hell.
Quo tempore Wisigothae Thracias Daciamque Ripensem post tanti gloriam tropaei tamquam solo genitili potiti coeperunt incolere.	From this time the Visigoths, in consequence of their glorious victory, possessed Thrace and Dacia Ripensis as if it were their native land.
XXVII 139	
Sed Theodosio ab Hispania a Gratiano Imperatore electo et in orientalem principatum, loco Valentis patui, surrogato, militarique disciplina mox in meliorem statum reposita, ignaviam priorum principum et desidiam exclusam Gothus ut sensit, pertimuit.	Now in the place of his uncle Valens {Emperor of the East, 364-378}, the Emperor Gratian (Emperor of the West, 375-383) established Theodosius {I} the Spaniard {Emperor of the East, 379-395} in the Eastern Empire. Military discipline was soon restored to a high level, and the Goth, perceiving that the cowardice and sloth of former princes was ended, became afraid.
Nam Imperator acri omnino ingenio virtuteque et consilio clarus, dum praeceptorum severitate et liberalitate blanditiaque sua remissum exercitum ad fortia provocaret.	For the Emperor was famed alike for his acuteness and discretion. By stern commands and by generosity and kindness he encouraged a demoralized army to deeds of daring.
140	
At vero ubi milites, principe meliore mutato, fiduciam acceperunt, Gothos impetere temptant eosque Thraciae finibus pellunt.	But when the soldiers, who had obtained a better leader by the change, gained new confidence, they sought to attack the Goths and drove them from the borders of Thrace.
Sed Theodosio Principe paene tunc usque ad desperationem aegrotanti, datur iterum Gothis audacia; divisoque exercitu, Fritigernus ad Thessaliam praedandam Epiros et Achajam digressus est, Alatheus vero et Safrac cum residuis copiis	But as the Emperor Theodosius fell so sick at this time that his life was almost despaired of, the Goths were again inspired with courage. Dividing the Gothic army, Friþi-gairn {"Peace-yearning"} set out to plunder Thessaly, Epirus and Achaia, while

Pannoniam petierunt.	Ala-þiw {"General-minister," lit. "All-servant"} and Saba-rak {(perhaps) "Clearsighted narrator"} with the rest of the troops made for Pannonia.
141	
Quod quum Gratianus Imperator, qui tunc a Roma in Gallias ob incursionem Wandalorum {[<i>emendatius: Alamannorum</i>]} recesserat, comperisset quia Theodosio fatali desperatione succumbenti Gothi magis saevirent, mox ad eos collecto venit exercitu, nec tamen fretus armis, sed gratia eos muneribusque victurus, pacemque, victualia illis concedens, cum ipsis inito foedere, fecit.	Now the Emperor Gratian had at this time retreated from Rome to Gaul because of the invasions of the Vandals {[<i>more correctly: of the Ala-mannans</i>]}. When he learned that the Goths were acting with greater boldness because Theodosius was in despair of his life, he quickly gathered an army and came against them. Yet he put no trust in arms, but sought to conquer them by kindness and gifts. So he entered on a truce with them and made peace, giving them provisions.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXVIII</p> <p style="text-align: center;">142</p>	
Ubi vero posthaec Theodosius convaluit Imperator repperitque cum Gothis et Romanis Gratianum Imperatorem foedus pepigisse quod ipse optaverat, admodum grato animo ferens, et ipse in hac pace consensit, Athanaricumque regem qui tunc Fritigerno successerat, datis muneribus, sibi sociavit moribusque suis benignissimis ad se eum Constantinopolim accedere invitavit.	When the Emperor Theodosius afterwards recovered and learned that the Emperor Gratian had made a compact between the Goths and the Romans, as he had himself desired, he took it very graciously and gave his assent. He gave gifts to King Aþana-reik {"Noble ruler"}, who had succeeded Friþi-gaírn, made an alliance with him and in the most gracious manner invited him to visit him in Constantinople.
143	
Qui omnino libenter acquiescens regiam urbem ingressus est miransque: "En," inquit, "cerno, quod saepe incredulus audiebam," famam videlicet tantae urbis; et huc illuc oculos volvens, nunc situm urbis commeatumque navium, nunc moenia clara prospectans miratur, populosque diversarum gentium quasi fonte in uno e diversis partibus scaturientem undam, sic militem quoque ordinatum aspiciens: "Deus," inquit,	Aþana-reik very gladly consented and as he entered the royal city exclaimed in wonder "Lo, now I see what I have often heard of with unbelieving ears," meaning the great and famous city. Turning his eyes hither and thither, he marveled as he beheld the location of the city, the coming and going of the ships, the splendid walls, and the people of diverse nations like floodwater from different regions bubbling up in the same basin. Thus when he saw the army in array also, he said "Truly the

"sine dubio terrenus est Imperator, et quisquis adversus eum manum moverit, ipse sui sanguinis reus existit."	Emperor is a god on earth, and whoever raises a hand against him is guilty of his own blood."
144	
In tali ergo admiratione majoreque a Principe honore suffultus, paucis mensibus interjectis, ab hac luce migravit. Quem Princeps, affectionis gratia, paene plus mortuum quam vivum honorans dignae tradidit sepulturae, ipse quoque in exsequiis feretro ejus praeiens.	In the midst of his admiration and the enjoyment of even greater honors at the hand of the Emperor, he departed this life {(winter of 381 A.D.)} after the space of a few months. The Emperor had such affection for him that he honored Apana-reik even more when he was dead than during his lifetime, for he not only gave him a worthy burial, but himself walked before the bier at the funeral.
145	
Defuncto ergo Athanarico, cunctus ejus exercitus in servitio Theodosii Imperatoris perdurans, Romano se imperio subdens, cum milite velut unum corpus effecit, militiaque illa dudum sub Constantino Principe foederatorum renovata, et ipsi dicti sunt Foederati.	Now when Apana-reik was dead, his whole army continued in the service of the Emperor Theodosius and submitted to the Roman rule, forming as it were one body with the imperial soldiery. The former service of the Allies under the Emperor Constantine was now renewed and they were again called Allies.
E quibus Imperator contra Eugenium tyrannum, qui, occiso Gratiano, Gallias occupaverat, plus quam viginti milia armatorum, fideles sibi et amicos intellegens, secum duxit; victoriaque de praedicto tyranno potitus, ultionem exegit.	And since the Emperor knew that they were faithful to him and his friends, he took from their number more than twenty thousand warriors to serve against the tyrant Eugenius who, having slain Gratian {(the slayer was actually Maximus the Spaniard in 383, not Eugenius)}, had seized Gaul. After winning the victory {(394 Sept. 5-6)} over this usurper, he wrought his vengeance upon him.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXIX</p> <p style="text-align: center;">146</p>	
Postquam vero Theodosius, amator pacis generisque Gothorum, rebus excessit humanis, coeperuntque ejus filii utramque rem publicam luxuriose viventes	But afterwards Theodosius, the lover of peace and of the Gothic race, passed from human cares, and his sons {Arcadius (in

<p>annihilare auxiliariisque suis - id est, Gothis - consueta dona subtrahere, mox Gothis fastidium eorum increvit; verentesque, ne longa pace sua resolveretur fortitudo, ordinant super se regem Alaricum, cui erat post Amalos secunda nobilitas, Balthorumque ex genere origo mirifica, qui dudum ob audaciam virtutis "Baltha," id est, "Audax," nomen inter suos acceperant.</p>	<p>the East, 395-408) and Honorius (in the West, 394-423)} began to ruin both empires by their luxurious living and to deprive their Allies - that is, the Goths - of the customary gifts. The contempt of the Goths for the Romans soon increased, and for fear their valor would be destroyed by long peace, they appointed Ala-reik {"All-ruler"} king over themselves. He was of a famous stock, and his nobility was second only to that of the Amali, for he came from the family of the Balþos, who because of their daring valor had long ago received among their race the name "Balþs" {"Bold," "Daring"}, that is, "the Bold."</p>
147	
<p>Mox ergo antefatus Alaricus creatus est rex; cum suis deliberans, suasit eos suo labore quaerere regna quam alienis per otium subjacere; et, sumpto exercitu, per Pannonias - Stilicone et Aureliano consulibus - et per Sirmium, dextroque latere quasi a viris vacuam intravit Italiam, nulloque penitus obsistente ad pontem applicavit Candidiani, qui tertio milliaro ab urbe aberat regia Ravennate.</p>	<p>Now when this Ala-reik was made king, he took counsel with his men and persuaded them to seek a kingdom by their own exertions rather than serve others in idleness. In the consulship of Stilika and Aurelian {A.D. 400} he raised an army and entered Italy, which seemed to be bare of defenders, and came through Pannonia and Sirmium {(modern Sremska Mitrovica, Yugoslavia)} along the right side. Without meeting any resistance, he reached the bridge of the river Candidianus {modern Candiano} at the third milestone from the royal city of Ravenna {(Residence of the: western Roman emperors, 402-476; Ostrogothic kings, to 540; Byzantine exarchs, to 750)}.</p>
148	
<p>Quae urbs inter paludes et pelagus interque Padi fluentia uno tantum patet accessu, cujus dudum possessores, ut tradunt majores, αἰνετοί, id est, "laudabiles," dicebantur.</p>	<p>This city lies amid the streams of the Po between swamps and the sea, and is accessible only on one side. Its ancient inhabitants, as our ancestors relate, were called <i>Ainetoi</i> {αἰνετοί (but actually they were the Illyrian <u>Veneti</u>)}, that is, "Laudable."</p>

Haec, in sinu regni Romani super mare Ionium constituta, in modum insulae influentium aquarum redundatione concluditur.	Situated in a corner of the Roman Empire above the Ionian {(actually, the Adriatic)} Sea, it is hemmed in like an island by a flood of rushing waters.
149	
Habet ab oriente mare, ad quod qui recto cursu de Corcyra atque Helladis partibus navigat, dextrum latus primum Epirum, dehinc Dalmatiam, Liburniam, Histriamque et sic Venetias radens palmula navigat.	On the east it has the sea, and one who sails straight to it from the region of Corfu {(off the coast of Epirus)} and those parts of Greece sweeps with his oarblades along the right hand coast, first touching Epirus, then Dalmatia, Liburnia and Histria and at last the Venetian Isles.
Ab occidente vero habet paludes, per quas uno angustissimo introitu ut porta relicta est.	But on the west it has swamps through which a sort of door has been left by a very narrow entrance.
A septentrionali quoque plaga ramus illi ex Pado est, qui Fossa vocitatur Asconis.	To the north is an arm of the Po, called Ascon's Canal.
150	
A meridie item ipse Padus, quem Italiae soli fluviorum regem dicunt, cognomento Eridanus, qui, ab Augusto Imperatore latissima fossa demissus, septima sui alvei parte per mediam influit civitatem, ad ostia sua amoenissimum portum praebens, classem ducentarum quinquaginta navium, Dione referente, tutissima dudum credebatur recipere statione.	On the south likewise is the Po itself, which they call the King of the rivers of Italy; and it also has the name Eridanus. This river, diverted by the Emperor Augustus into a very broad canal, flows through the midst of the city with a seventh part of its stream, affording a pleasant harbor at its mouth. Men believed in ancient times, as Dio relates, that it would hold a fleet of two hundred and fifty vessels in its safe anchorage.
151	
Qui nunc, ut Ablabius ait, quod aliquando portus fuerit, spatiosissimos hortos ostendit arboribus plenos, verum de quibus non pendent vela, sed poma.	Ablabius says that this, which was once a harbor, now displays itself like a spacious garden full of trees; but from them hang not sails but apples.
Trino si quidem urbs ipsa vocabulo gloriatur, trigeminaque positione exultat, id est: prima, Ravenna; ultima, Classis; media, Caesarea inter urbem et mare, plena mollitiae, harenaque minuta vvectionibus apta.	The city itself boasts of three names and is happily placed in its threefold location. I mean to say the first is called Ravenna and the most distant part Classis; while midway between the city and the sea is Caesarea, full of luxury. The sand of the beach is fine-

	grained and suited for riding.
XXX 152	
Verum enimvero quum in ejus vicinitatem Wisigotharum applicuisset exercitus et ad Honorium Imperatorem, qui intus residebat, legationem misisset, quatenus si permetteret, ut Gothi pacati in Italia residerent, sic eos cum Romanorum populo vivere, ut una gens utraque credi posset: sin autem aliter, bellando quis quem valeret expellere, ut jam securus qui victor exsisteret, imperaret.	But as I was saying, when the army of the Visigoths had come into the neighborhood of this city, they sent an embassy to the Emperor {(of the West, 394-423)} Honorius, who dwelt within. They said that if he permitted the Goths to settle peaceably in Italy, they would so live with the Roman people that men might believe them both to be of one race; but if not, it would be through battle who should have the power to drive out whom, with the result that whoever proved the victor would thenceforth rule unmolested.
Sed Honorius Imperator, utramque pollicitationem formidans, suoque cum senatu inito consilio, quomodo eos finibus Italicis expelleret, deliberabat.	But the Emperor Honorius feared to make either promise. So he took counsel with his Senate and considered how he might drive them from the Italian borders.
153	
Cui ad postremum sententia sedit, quatenus provincias longe positas, id est Gallias Hispaniasque (quas paene jam perdidisset, Gaisaricique eas Wandalorum regis vastaret irruptio), si valeret, Alaricus sua cum gente sibi tamquam lares proprios vindicaret.	He finally decided that Ala-reik and his race, if they were able to do so, should be allowed to seize for their own home the provinces farthest away, namely, Gaul and Spain. For at this time he had almost lost them, and moreover they were being devastated by the invasion of Gaisa-reik {"Spear-ruler," "Javelin-prince"}, king of the Vandals {428-477}.
Donatione sacro oraculo confirmata consentiunt Gothi huic ordinationi, et ad patriam sibi traditam proficiscuntur.	The grant was confirmed by a sacred imperial rescript, and the Goths, consenting to the arrangement, set out for the country given them.
154	
Post quorum discessum, nec quoquam mali in Italia perpetrato, Stilico Patricius et socer Honorii Imperatoris - nam utramque ejus filiam, id est Mariam et Thermantiam, quas sibi Princeps unam post unam sociavit, utramque virginem et intactam	When they had gone away without doing any harm in Italy, Stilika {"The Stealer"}, the Patrician and father-in-law of the Emperor Honorius, - for the Emperor had married both his daughters, Maria and Thermantia, in succession, but God called both from this

Deus ab hac luce vocavit - hic ergo Stilico ad Pollentiam civitatem in Alpibus Cottiarum locatam dolose accedens, nihilque mali suspicantibus Gothis ad necem totius Italiae suamque deformitatem ruit in bellum.	world in their virgin purity - this Stilika, I say, treacherously hurried to Pollentia {modern Pollenza}, a city in the Cottian Alps. There he fell upon the unsuspecting Goths in battle {(Easter Sunday, April 6, 402)}, to the ruin of all Italy and his own disgrace.
155	
Quem ex improvise Gothi cernentes primum perterriti sunt, sed, mox recollectis animis et, ut solebant, hortatibus excitati, omnem paene exercitum Stiliconis in fugam conversum usque ad internecionem dejiciunt, furibundoque animo coeptum iter deserunt et in Liguriam post se, unde jam transierant, revertuntur: eamque, praedis spoliisque potiti, Aemiliam pari tenore devastant; Flaminiaeque aggerem inter Picenum et Tusciam usque ad urbem Romam discurrentes, quicquid in utroque latere fuit, in praedam diripiunt.	When the Goths suddenly beheld him, at first they were terrified. Soon regaining their courage and arousing each other by brave shouting, as is their custom, they turned to flight the entire army of Stilika and almost exterminated it. Then forsaking the journey they had undertaken, the Goths with hearts full of rage returned again to Liguria whence they had set out. When they had plundered and spoiled it, they also laid waste to Aemilia, and then hastened toward the city of Rome along the Flaminian Way, which runs between Picenum and Tuscia, taking as booty whatever they found on either sides.
156	
Ad postremum Romam ingressi, Alarico jubente, spoliant tantum, non autem, ut solent gentes, ignem supponunt nec locis sanctorum in aliquo penitus injuriam irrogare patiuntur.	When they finally entered Rome, by Alaric's express command they merely sacked it and did not set the city on fire, as wild peoples usually do, nor did they permit serious damage to be done to the holy places.
Exindeque egressi per Campaniam et Lucaniam, simili clade peracta, Bruttios accesserunt; ubi diu residentes ad Siciliam et exinde ad Africae terras ire deliberant.	Thence they departed to bring like ruin upon Campania and Lucania, and then came to Bruttii. Here they remained a long time and planned to go to Sicily and thence to the countries of Africa.
Bruttiorum siquidem regio in extremis Italiae finibus, australi interjacens parte - angulus ejus Appennini montis initium facit -, Hadriaeque pelagus velut lingua porrecta a Tyrrheno aestu sejungens; nomen quondam a Bruttia sortitur regina.	Now the land of the Bruttii {(modern Calabria)} is at the extreme southern bound of Italy, and a corner of it marks the beginning of the Apennine mountains. It stretches out like a tongue into the Adriatic Sea {(= actually the Ionian Sea)} and separates it from the Tyrrhenian waters. It chanced to receive its name in ancient times

	from a Queen Bruttia.
157	
Ibi ergo veniens Alaricus rex Wisigotharum, cum opibus totius Italiae quas in praedam diripuerat, exinde, ut dictum est, per Siciliam ad Africam quietam patriam transire disponit.	To this place came Ala-reik, king of the Visigoths, with the wealth of all Italy which he had taken as spoil, and from there, as we have said, he intended to cross over by way of Sicily to the quiet homeland of Africa.
Cujus - quia non est liberum, quodcunque homo sine nutu Dei disposuerit - fretum illud horribile aliquantas naves submersit, plurimas conturbavit.	But since man is not free to do anything he wishes without the will of God, that dread strait sunk several of his ships and threw all into confusion.
Qua adversitate depulsus, Alaricus, dum secum, quid ageret, deliberaret, subito immatura morte praeventus rebus humanis excessit.	Ala-reik was cast down by his reverse and, while deliberating what he should do, was suddenly overtaken by an untimely death and departed from human cares {(410 A.D.)}.
158	
Quem, nimia ejus dilectione lugentes, Busento amne juxta Consentinam civitatem de alveo suo derivato - nam hic fluvius a pede montis juxta urbem dilapsus fluit unda salutifera -, hujus ergo in medio alvei, collecto captivorum agmine sepulturae locum effodiunt, in cujus foveae gremio Alaricum cum multis opibus obruunt, rursusque aquas in suum alveum reducentes; ne a quoquam quandoque locus cognosceretur, fossores omnes interimunt, regnumque Wisigotharum Athawulfo, ejus consanguineo et forma menteque conspicuo, tradunt; nam erat, quamvis, non adeo proceritate staturae formatus, quantum pulchritudine corporis vultuque decorus.	His people mourned for him with the utmost affection. Then turning from its course the river Busentus {(modern Busento)} near the city of Consentia {(modern Cosenza)} - for this stream flows with its wholesome waters from the foot of a mountain near that city -, they led a band of captives into the midst of its bed to dig out a place for his grave. In the depths of this pit they buried Ala-reik, together with many treasures, and then turned the waters back into their channel. And that none might ever know the place, they put to death all the diggers. They bestowed the kingdom of the Visigoths on Apa-wulf {"Noble wolf"}, his kinsman, a man of imposing beauty and great spirit; for he was not built so tall, granted, in stature as he was comely in beauty of face and body.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXXI</p>	
159	
Qui suscepto regno revertens iterum Romam, si quid primum remanserat, more locustarum erasit, nec tantum privatis	When Apa-wulf became king, he returned again to Rome, and whatever had escaped the first sack his Goths stripped bare like

divitiis Italiam spolians, immo et publicis, Imperatore Honorio nihil resistere praevalente, cujus et germanam, Placidiam, Theodosii Imperatoris ex altera uxore filiam, ab urbe captivam abduxit.	locusts, not merely despoiling Italy of its private wealth, but even of its public resources. The Emperor Honorius was powerless to resist even when his sister Placidia, the daughter of the Emperor Theodosius by his second wife, was led away captive from the city.
160	
Quam tamen ob generis nobilitatem, formaeque pulchritudinem et integritatem castitatis attendens in Foro Julii, Aemiliae civitate, suo matrimonio legitime copulavit, ut gentes, hac societate comperta, quasi adunata Gothis re publica efficacius terrentur, Honoriumque Augustum, quamvis opibus exhaustum, tamen jam quasi cognatum grato animo derelinquens, Gallias tendit.	But Aþa-wulf was attracted by the nobility of her lineage, by her beauty and chaste purity, and so he took her to wife in lawful marriage {A.D. 414} at Forum Julii, a city in Aemilia {actually in Gallia Narbonensis, at what is now Narbonne, France}. When the barbarians learned of this alliance, they were the more effectually terrified, since the Empire and the Goths now seemed to be made one. Then Aþa-wulf set out for Gaul, leaving Honorius Augustus stripped of his wealth, to be sure, yet pleased at heart because he was now a sort of kinsman of his.
161	
Quo quum advenisset, vicinae gentes perterritae in suis se coeperunt finibus continere, quae dudum crudeliter Gallias infestassent, tam Franci, quam Burgundiones.	Upon his arrival the neighboring tribes who had long made cruel raids into Gaul - Franks and Baúrgundjans {Burgundians, "the Fortress-dwellers"} alike -, were terrified and began to keep within their own borders.
Nam Wandali vel Alani, quos superius diximus permissu Principum Romanorum in utraque Pannonia residere, nec ibi sibi metu Gothorum arbitantes tutum fore, si reverterentur, ad Gallias transierunt.	Now the Vandals and the Alani, as we have said before, had been dwelling in both Pannonias by permission of the Roman Emperors. Yet fearing they would not be safe even here if the Goths should return, they crossed over into Gaul.
162	
Sed mox a Galliis, quas ante non multum tempus occupassent, fugientes, Hispanias se recluserunt, adhuc memores ex relatione majorum suorum, quid dudum Geberich, Gothorum rex, genti suae praestitisset	But no long time after they had taken possession of Gaul they fled thence and shut themselves up in Spain, for they still remembered from the tales of their forefathers what ruin Giba-reik {"Giving

incommodi, vel quomodo eos virtute sua patrio solo expulisset.	ruler," "Bestowing ruler"}, king of the Goths, had long ago brought on their race, and how by his valor he had driven them from their native land.
Tali ergo casu Galliae Athawulfo patuere venienti.	And thus it happened that Gaul lay open to Aþa-wulf when he came.
163	
Confirmato ergo Gothus regno in Galliis, Hispanorum casu coepit dolere, eosque deliberans a Wandalorum incursibus eripere, suis opibus Barcelona cum certis fidelibus relictis plebeque imbelli, interiores Hispanias introivit, ubi saepe cum Wandalis decertans, tertio anno, postquam Gallias Hispaniasque domuisset, occubuit, gladio ilibus perforatis Everwulfi, de cujus solitus erat ridere statura.	Now when the Goth had established his kingdom in Gaul, he began to grieve for the plight of the Spaniards and planned to save them from the attacks of the Vandals. So Aþa-wulf left at Barcelona his treasures with some faithful followers and the men who were unfit for war, and entered the interior of Spain. Here he fought frequently with the Vandals and, in the third year after he had subdued Gaul and Spain, fell pierced through the groin by the sword of Ibr-wulf {"Boar-Wolf"}, a man whose short stature he had been wont to mock.
Post cujus mortem Sigisricus rex constituitur; sed et ipse, suorum fraude peremptus, ocius regnum cum vita reliquit.	After his death Sigis-reik {"Victorious ruler"} was appointed king, but he too was slain by the treachery of his own men and lost both his kingdom and his life even more quickly than Aþa-wulf.

DE ORIGINE ACTIBUSQUE GETARUM	THE ORIGIN AND DEEDS OF THE GOTHs
<p style="text-align: center;">XXXII</p> <p style="text-align: center;">164</p>	
Dehinc jam quartus ab Alarico rex constituitur Wallia nimis dstrictus et prudens, contra quem Honorius Imperator Constantium virum industria militari pollentem multisque proeliis gloriosum cum exercitu dirigit, veritus, ne foedus dudum cum Athawulfo initum ipse turbaret et aliquas rursus in rem publicam insidias moliretur, vicinis sibi gentibus expulsis, simulque desiderans germanam	Then Wallia {"Selected one," "Elite"}, the fourth from Ala-reik, was made king, and he was an exceeding stern and prudent man. The Emperor Honorius {Emperor of the West, 394-423} sent an army against him {A.D. 415} under Constantius {III; Magister Militum (General of the Army) under Honorius, then briefly co-emperor (Augustus) in the West with him, 421}, who was famed for his

<p>suam Placidiam subjectionis opprobrio liberare, paciscens cum Constantio, ut, aut bello aut pace vel quoquo modo si eam potuisset ad suum regnum reducere, ei eam in matrimonium sociaret.</p>	<p>achievements in war and distinguished in many battles, for he feared that Wallia would break the treaty long ago made with Aþa-wulf and that, after driving out the neighboring tribes, he would again plot evil against the Empire. Moreover Honorius was eager to free his sister Placidia from the disgrace of servitude, and made an agreement with Constantius that if by peace or war or any means so ever he could bring her back to the kingdom, he should have her in marriage.</p>
165	
<p>Quo placito Constantius ovans cum copia armatorum et paene jam regio apparatu Hispanias petit.</p>	<p>Pleased with this promise, Constantius set out for Spain with an armed force and in almost royal splendor.</p>
<p>Cui Wallia rex Gothorum non cum minori procinctu ad claustra Pyrenaei occurrit; ubi ab utraque parte legatione directa ita convenit pacisci, ut Placidiam sororem principis redderet suaque solacia Romanae rei publicae, ubi usus exegerit, non denegaret.</p>	<p>Wallia, king of the Goths, met him at a pass in the Pyrenees with as great a force. Hereupon embassies were sent by both sides and it was decided to make peace on the following terms, namely that Wallia should give up Placidia, the Emperor's sister, and should not refuse to aid the Roman Empire when occasion demanded.</p>
<p>Eo namque tempore Constantinus quidam apud Gallias invadens imperium, filium suum Constantem ex monacho fecerat Caesarem; sed non diu tenens praesumptum regnum, mox, foederatis Gothis Romanisque, ipse occiditur Arelati, filius vero ejus Viennae.</p>	<p>Now at that time a certain Constantine usurped imperial power in Gaul and appointed as Caesar his son Constans, who was formerly a monk. But when he had held for a short time the Empire he had seized, he was himself slain at Arles {in 411} and his son at Vienne.</p>
<p>Post quos item Jovinus ac Sebastianus pari temeritate rem publicam occupandam existimantes pari exitio perierunt.</p>	<p>Jovinus and Sebastian succeeded them with equal presumption and thought they might seize the imperial power; but they perished by a like fate.</p>
166	
<p>Nam duodecimo anno regni Walliae, quando et Hunni post paene quinquaginta annorum, invasa Pannonia a Romanis et Gothis, expulsi sunt, videns Wallia Wandalos in suos fines, id est, Hispaniae solum, audaci temeritate ab interioribus</p>	<p>Now in the twelfth year of Wallia's reign the Huns were driven out of Pannonia by the Romans and Goths, almost fifty years after they had taken possession of it. Then Wallia found that the Vandals had come forth with bold audacity from the interior of Gallicia,</p>

<p>partibus Galliciae, quo eos dudum fugaverat Athawulfus, egressos et cuncta in praedas vastare, eo fere tempore, quo Hierius et Ardabures consules processissent; nec mora, mox contra eos movit exercitum.</p>	<p>whither Apa-wulf {"Noble wolf"} had long ago driven them, and were devastating and plundering everywhere in his own territories, namely in the land of Spain. So he made no delay but moved his army against them at once, at about the time when Hierius and Ardabures had become consuls {A.D. 427}.</p>
---	---

XXXIII

167

<p>Sed Gaisaricus rex Wandalorum jam a Bonifatio in Africam invitatus - qui Valentiniano Principi veniens in offensam non aliter se quam malo rei publicae potuit vindicare; is ergo, suis precibus eos invitans, per trajectum angustiarum, qui dicitur fretum Gaditanum et vix septem milibus Africam ab Hispaniis dividit ostiaque maris Tyrrheni in Oceani aestum egeritur, transposuit.</p>	<p>But Gaisa-reik {"Spear Ruler, Javelin Ruler"}, king of the Vandals, had already been invited into Africa by Boniface, who had fallen into a dispute with the Emperor Valentinian {III, Emperor of the West, 425-455} and was able to obtain revenge only by injuring the empire. So he invited them urgently and brought them across the narrow strait known as the Strait of Gades, scarcely seven miles wide, which divides Africa from Spain and discharges the mouth of the Tyrrhenian Sea into the waters of Ocean.</p>
--	---

168

<p>Erat namque Gaisaricus jam Romanorum clade in urbe notissimus, statura mediocris et equi casu claudicans, animo profundus, sermone rarus, luxuriae contemptor, ira turbidus, habendi cupidus, ad sollicitandas gentes providentissimus, semina contentionum jacere, odia miscere paratus.</p>	<p>Gaisa-reik, still famous in the City for the disaster of the Romans, was a man of moderate height and lame in consequence of a fall from his horse. He was a man of deep thought and few words, holding luxury in disdain, furious in his anger, greedy for gain, shrewd in winning over the barbarians and skilled in sowing the seeds of dissension to arouse enmity.</p>
--	--

169

<p>Talis Africae rem publicam, precibus Bonifatii, ut diximus, invitatus intravit, ubi a divinitate, ut fertur, accepta auctoritate diu regnans, ante obitum suum filiorum agmen accitum ordinavit, ne inter ipsos de regni ambitione contentio esset, sed ordine quisque et gradu suo, alii si superviveret - id est, seniori suo fieret sequens successor</p>	<p>Such was he who, as we have said, came at the solicitous invitation of Boniface to the country of Africa. There he reigned for a long time, receiving authority, as they say, from God Himself. Before his death he summoned the band of his sons and ordained that there should be no strife among them because of desire for the kingdom, but that</p>
---	---

et rursus ei posterior ejus. Quod observantes per annorum multorum spatia regnum feliciter possederunt, nec, ut reliquis gentibus assolet, intestino bello foedati sunt, suoque ordine unus post unum regnum excipiens in pace populis imperavit.	each should reign in his own rank and order as he survived the others; that is, the next younger should succeed his elder brother, and he in turn should be followed by his junior. By giving heed to his command they ruled their kingdom in happiness for the space of many years and were not disgraced by civil war, as is usual among other nations, one after the other receiving the kingdom and ruling the people in peace.
170	
Quorum ordo iste ac successio fuit: primum Gaisaricus, qui pater et dominus; sequens Huniricus; tertius Gunthamundus; quartus Thrasamundus; quintus Hildirix, quem malo gentis suae Geilamer, immemor atavi praeceptorum, de regno ejectum et interemptum tyrannide praesumpsit.	Now this is their order of succession: first, Gaisa-reik who was father and lord; next, Huni-reik {"Power-ruler, Prince of Force"}; the third Gunþa-mund {"Battle-protection, War-defense"}; the fourth Þrasa-mund {"Strident defense, Roaring protection"}; and the fifth Hildi-reik {"Battle-ruler"}. He was driven from the throne and slain by Gailamer {"Happy renown, Glad fame"}, who destroyed his race by disregarding his ancestor's advice and setting up a tyranny.
171	
Sed non ei cessit impune quod fecerat, nam mox Justiniani Imperatoris ultio in eo apparuit et cum omni genere suo opibusque, quibus more praedonis incumbibat, Constantinopolim delatus per virum gloriosissimum Belisarium Magistrum Militum Orientalem, Exconsulem Ordinarium atque Patricium, magnum in circo populo spectaculum fuit seramque suam paenitudinem gerens quum se videret de fastigio regali dejectum, in privatam vitam, cui noluit famulari, redactus occubuit.	But what he had done did not remain unpunished, for soon the vengeance of the Emperor Justinian was manifested against him. With his whole family and that wealth over which he gloated like a robber, he was taken to Constantinople by that most renowned warrior Belisarius, Master of the Soldiery of the East, Ex-Consul Ordinary and Patrician. Here he afforded a great spectacle to the people in the Circus. His repentance, when he beheld himself cast down from his royal state, came too late. He died reduced to the status of a commoner, a life to which he had formerly been unwilling to submit.
172	
Sic Africa, quae in divisione orbis terrarum tertia pars mundi describitur,	Thus after a century Africa, which in the division of the earth's surface is regarded as

centesimo fere anno a Wandalico jugo erepta in libertatem revocata est regni Romani, et quam dudum ignavis dominis ducibusque infidelibus a rei publicae Romanae corpore gentilis manus abstulerat, a sollerti domino et fideli ductore nunc revocata hodieque congaudet.	the third part of the world, was delivered from the yoke of the Vandals and brought back to the liberty of the Roman Empire. The country which the hand of the heathen had long ago cut off from the body of the Roman Empire, by reason of the cowardice of emperors and the treachery of generals, was now restored by a wise prince and a faithful leader and to-day is happily flourishing.
Quamvis et post haec aliquantulum intestino proelio Maurorumque infidelitate attritam sese lamentata sit, tamen triumphus Justiniani Imperatoris a deo donatus, quae incohaverat, ad pacem usque perduxit.	And though, even after this, it had to deplore the misery of civil war and the treachery of the Moors, yet the triumph of the Emperor Justinian, vouchsafed him by God, brought to a peaceful conclusion what he had begun.
Sed nobis quid opus est, unde res non exigit, dicere? Ad propositum redeamus.	But why need we speak of what the subject does not require? Let us return to our theme.
173	
Wallia si quidem, rex Gothorum, adeo cum suis in Wandalos saeviebat, ut voluisset eos etiam et in Africam persequi, nisi eum casus, qui dudum Alarico in Africam tendenti contigerat, revocasset.	Now Wallia, king of the Goths, and his army fought so fiercely against the Vandals that he would have pursued them even into Africa, had not such a misfortune recalled him as had once befallen Ala-reik {"All-ruler"} when the latter was setting out for Africa.
Nobilitatus namque intra Hispanias incruentaque victoria potitus Tolosam revertitur; Romano imperio fugatis hostibus aliquantas provincias, quod promiserat, derelinquens, sibique adversa post longum, valitudine superveniente, rebus humanis excessit.	So when he had won great fame in Spain, he returned after a bloodless victory to Toulouse, turning over to the Roman Empire, as he had promised, a number of provinces which he had rid of his foes. A long time after this he was seized by sickness and departed this life.
174	
Eo videlicet tempore, quo Beremud, Thorismudo patre progenitus, de quo in catalogo Amalorum familiae superius diximus, cum filio Widirico ab Ostrogothis, qui adhuc in Scythiae terris Hunnorum oppressionibus subjacebant, ad Wisigotharum regnum migravit.	Just at that time Baíri-moð {"Bear mood"}, the son of Þáuris-moð {"Daring mood"}, whom we have mentioned above in the genealogy of the family of the Amals, departed with his son Wiði-reik {"Forest ruler"} from the Ostrogoths, who still submitted to the oppression of the Huns in the land of Scythia, and came to the kingdom

	of the Visigoths.
Conscius enim virtutis et generis nobilitatis, facilius sibi credens principatum a parentibus deferri, quem heredem regum constabat esse multorum.	Well aware of his valor and noble birth, he believed that the kingdom would be the more readily bestowed upon him by his kinsmen, inasmuch as he was known to be the heir of many kings.
Quis namque de Amalo dubitaret, si vacasset, eligere? Sed nec ipse adeo voluit, quis esset, ostendere.	And who would hesitate to choose one of the Amalos, if there were an empty throne? But he was not himself eager to make known who he was.
175	
Et illi jam post mortem Walliae Theodoridum ei dederunt successorem.	And so upon the death of Wallia the Visigoths made Þiuða-reð {"People-counsellor," "Advisor of the folk"} his successor.
Ad quem veniens, Beremud, animi pondere quo valebat, eximiam generis sui amplitudinem commoda taciturnitate suppressit, sciens regnantibus semper regali stirpe genitos esse suspectos.	Baíri-moð came to him and, with the strength of mind for which he was noted, concealed his noble birth by prudent silence, for he knew that those of royal lineage are always distrusted by kings.
Passus est ergo ignorari, ne faceret ordinata confundi.	So he suffered himself to remain unknown, that he might not bring the established order into confusion.
Susceptusque cum filio suo a rege Theodorido honorifice nimis, adeo ut nec consilii sui expertem nec convivii faceret alienum, non tamen pro generis nobilitate, quam ignorabat, sed pro animi fortitudine et robore mentis, quam non poterat occultare.	King Þiuða-reð received him and his son with special honor and made him partner in his counsels and a companion at his board; not for his noble birth, which he knew not, but for his brave spirit and strong mind, which Baíri-moð could not conceal.
XXXIV 176	
Quid plurimum? defuncto Wallia (ut superius quod diximus repetamus), qui parum fuerat felix Gallis, prosperrimus feliciorque Theodoridus successit in regno, homo summa moderatione compositus, animi corporisque utilitate habendus.	And what more? Wallia (to repeat what we have said) had but little success against the Gauls, but when he died the more fortunate and prosperous Þiuða-reð succeeded to the throne. He was a man of the greatest moderation and notable for vigor of mind and body.
Contra quem, Theodosio et Festo	In the consulship of Theodosius and Festus

consulibus, pace rupta, Romani, Hunnis auxiliariis secum junctis, in Gallias arma moverunt. Turbaverat namque eos Gothorum foederatorum manus, quae cum Gaina Comite Constantinopolim efferasset.	{439} the Romans broke the truce and took up arms against him in Gaul, with the Huns as their auxiliaries. For a band of the Gallic Allies, led by Count Gaina, had aroused the Romans by throwing Constantinople into a panic.
Aëtius ergo Patricius tunc praeerat militibus, fortissimorum Moesiorum stirpe progenitus in Durostorena civitate a patre Gaudentio, labores bellicos tolerans, rei publicae Romanae singulariter natus, qui superbiam Suevorum Francorumque barbariem immensis caedibus servire Romano imperio coegit.	Now at that time the Patrician Aëtius was in command of the army. He was of the bravest Moesian stock, born of his father Gaudentius in the city of Durostorum (modern Silistra, Bulgaria, on the lower Danube). He was a man fitted to endure the toils of war, born expressly to serve the Roman state; and by inflicting crushing defeats he had compelled the proud Swevians {"(our) Own (people)"} and barbarous Franks {"the Free," "Bold," "Impetuous," "Impudent"} to submit to Roman sway.
177	
Hunnis quoque auxiliariis, Litorio ductante, contra Gothos Romanus exercitus movit procinctum, diuque ex utraque parte acies ordinatae, cum utrique fortes et neuter infirmior esset, datis dextris in pristinam concordiam redierunt, foedereque firmato ab alterutro, fida pace peracta, recessit uterque.	So then, with the Huns as allies under their leader Litorius, the Roman army moved in array against the Goths. When the battle lines of both sides had been standing for a long time opposite each other, both being brave and neither side the weaker, they struck a truce and returned to their ancient alliance. And after the treaty had been confirmed by both and an honest peace was established, they both withdrew.
178	
Qua pace Attila, Hunnorum omnium dominus et paene totius Scythiae gentium solus in mundo regnator, qui erat famosa inter omnes gentes claritate mirabilis.	During this peace Attila {"Little Father" (Gothic name taken by a Hun)} was lord over all the Huns and almost the sole earthly ruler of all the tribes of Scythia; a man marvelous for his glorious fame among all nations.
Ad quem in legatione se missum a Theodosio juniore Priscus historicus tali voce inter alia refert: "Ingentia si quidem flumina (id est, Tisia Tibisiaque et Dricca) transeunt	The historian Priscus, who was sent to him on an embassy {449} by the younger Theodosius {II; emperor of the East, 408-450}, says this among other things: "Crossing mighty rivers - namely,

<p>venimus in locum illum, ubi dudum Widigoja Gothorum fortissimus Sarmatum dolo occubuit.</p>	<p>the Tisia {also known as Pathissus; modern Tisza (German "Theiss"), in eastern Hungary} and Tibisia {or Tibissus (also Tibiscus and Pathissus, Greek Tiphesas; Modern Temes in Romania and Serbia); tributary of the Danube} and Drekon {tributary of the Tisza} - we came to the place where long ago Wiðu-gauja {"Woodland man," "Forest-region dweller"}, bravest of the Goths, perished by the guile of the Sarmatians.</p>
<p>Indeque non longe ad vicum, in quo rex Attila morabatur, accessimus, vicum inquam ad instar civitatis amplissimae, in quo lignea moenia ex tabulis nitentibus fabricata repperimus, quarum compago ita solidum mentiebatur, ut vix ab intentu posset junctura tabularum comprehendi.</p>	<p>At no great distance from that place we arrived at the village {modern Szeged, southeastern Hungary} where King Attila was dwelling, - a village, I say, like a great city, in which we found wooden walls made of smooth-shining boards, whose joints so counterfeited solidity that the union of the boards could scarcely be distinguished by close scrutiny.</p>
<p>179</p>	
<p>Videres triclinia ambitu prolixiore distenta, porticusque in omni decore dispositas. Area vero curtis ingenti ambitu cingebatur, ut amplitudo ipsa regiam aulam ostenderet." Hae sedes erant Attilae regi barbariem totam tenenti; haec captis civitatibus habitacula praeponebat.</p>	<p>There you might see dining halls of large extent and porticoes planned with great beauty, while the courtyard was bounded by so vast a circuit that its very size showed it was the royal palace." This was the abode of Attila, the king of all the barbarian world; and he preferred this as a dwelling to the cities he captured.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">XXXV 180</p>	
<p>Is namque Attila patre genitus Mundzuko, cujus fuere germani Octar et Roas, qui ante Attilam regnum tenuisse narrantur, quamvis non omnino cunctorum quorum ipse, post quorum obitum cum Bleda</p>	<p>Now this Attila was the son of Mundzuk, and his brothers were Octar and Ruas who are said to have ruled before Attila, though not over quite so many tribes as he. After their death he succeeded to the throne of the</p>

germano Hunnorum successit in regnum, et ut, ante, expeditioni quam parabat par foret, augmentum virium parricidio quaerit, tendens ad discrimen omnium nece suorum.	Huns, together with his brother Bleđa {"Fortune, Fame" (Gothic name taken by a Hun)}. In order that he might first be equal to the expedition he was preparing, he sought to increase his strength by murder. Thus he proceeded from the destruction of his own kindred to the menace of all others.
181	
Sed librante Justitia, detestabili remedio crescens, deformes exitus suae crudelitatis invenit.	Although growing more powerful by this repugnant expedient, through counterbalancing Justice he reaped hideous consequences of his cruelty.
Bleda enim fratre fraudibus interempto, qui magnae parti regnabat Hunnorum, universum sibi populum adunavit, aliarumque gentium, quas tunc in ditione tenebat, numerositate collecta, primas mundi gentes Romanos Wisigothasque subdere praeoptabat.	Now when his brother Bleđa, who ruled over a great part of the Huns, had been slain by his treachery {445}, Attila united all the people under his own rule. Gathering also a host of the other tribes which he then held under his sway, he sought to subdue the foremost nations of the world - the Romans and the Visigoths.
182	
Cujus exercitus quingentorum milium esse numero ferebatur.	His army is said to have numbered five hundred thousand men.
Vir in concussionem gentium natus in mundo, terrarum omnium metus, qui, nescio qua sorte, terrebat cuncta, formidabili de se opinione vulgata.	He was a man born into the world to shake the nations, the scourge of all lands, who in some way terrified all mankind by the fearsome rumors noised abroad concerning him.
Erat namque superbus incessu, huc atque illuc circumferens oculos, ut elati potentia ipso quoque motu corporis appareret; bellorum quidem amator, sed ipse manu temperans, consilio validissimus, supplicantibus exorabilis, propitius autem in fide semel susceptis; forma brevis, lato pectore, capite grandiore, minutis oculis, rarus barba, canis aspersus, simio naso, taeter colore, originis suae signa restituens.	He was haughty in his walk, rolling his eyes hither and thither, so that the power of his haughty spirit appeared in the very movement of his body. He was indeed a lover of war, yet restrained in action, mighty in counsel, gracious to suppliants and lenient to those who were once received into his protection. He was short of stature, with a broad chest and a large head; his eyes were small, his beard thin and sprinkled with gray; he was snub-nosed and of hideous

	color, revealing the evidences of his origin.
183	
Qui quamvis hujus esset naturae, ut semper magna confideret, addebat ei tamen confidentiam gladius Martis inventus, sacer apud Scytharum reges semper habitus, quem Priscus historicus tali refert occasione detectum:	And though his temper was such that he always had great self-confidence, yet his assurance was increased by finding the sword of Mars, always esteemed sacred among the kings of the Scythians. The historian Priscus says it was discovered under the following circumstances:
"Quum pastor," inquit, "quidam gregis unam buculam conspiceret claudicantem nec causam tanti vulneris inveniret, sollicitus vestigia cruoris insequitur tandemque venit ad gladium, quem depascens herbas incauta calcaverat, effossumque protinus ad Attilam defert.	"When a certain shepherd beheld one heifer of his flock limping and could find no cause for this wound, he anxiously followed the trail of blood and at length came to a sword it had unwittingly trampled while nibbling the grass. He dug it up and took it straight to Attila.
Quo munere ille gratulatus, ut erat magnanimus, arbitratur se mundi totius principem constitutum et per Martis gladium potestatem sibi concessam esse bellorum."	He rejoiced at this gift and, being ambitious, thought he had been appointed ruler of the whole world, and that through the sword of Mars supremacy in all wars was assured to him."
<p style="text-align: center;">XXXVI</p> <p style="text-align: center;">184</p>	
Hujus ergo mentem ad vastationem orbis paratam comperiens, Gaisericus, rex Wandalorum, quem paulo ante memoravimus, multis muneribus ad Wisigotharum bella praecipitat, metuens, ne Theodorus Wisigotharum rex filiae suae ulcisceretur injuriam, quae Hunirico, Gaisericici filio, juncta prius quidem tanto conjugio laetaretur, sed postea, ut erat ille et in sua pignora truculentus, ob suspicionem tantummodo veneni ab ea parati, naribus abscisam truncatamque auribus, spolians decore naturali, patri ejus ad Gallias remiserat, ut turpe funus miseranda semper offerret, et crudelitas,	Now when Gaisa-reik, king of the Vandals, whom we mentioned shortly before, learned that his mind was bent on the devastation of the world, he incited Attila by many gifts to make war on the Visigoths, for he was afraid that Þiuða-reð, king of the Visigoths, would avenge the injury done to his daughter. She had been joined in wedlock with Huni-reik {"Power-ruler, Prince of Strength"}, the son of Gaisa-reik, and at first was happy in this union. But afterwards he was cruel even to his own children, and because of the mere suspicion that she was attempting to poison him, he cut off her nose and mutilated her ears. He sent her back to her father in

qua etiam moverentur externi, vindictam patris efficacius impetraret.	Gaul thus despoiled of her natural charms. So the wretched girl presented a pitiable aspect ever after, and the cruelty which would stir even strangers still more surely incited her father to vengeance.
185	
Attila igitur dudum bella concepta Gaiserici instigatione parturiens, legatos in Italiam ad Valentinianum principem misit, serens Gothorum Romanorumque discordiam, ut, quos proelio non poterat concutere, odiis internis elideret, asserens, se rei publicae ejus amicitias in nullo violare, sed contra Theoderidum Wisigotharum regem sibi esse certamen.	Attila, therefore, in his efforts to bring about the wars long ago instigated by the bribe of Gaisa-reik, sent ambassadors into Italy {in 451} to the Emperor Valentinian {III; emperor of the West, 425-455} to sow strife between the Goths and the Romans, thinking to shatter by civil discord those whom he could not crush in battle. He declared that he was in no way violating his friendly relations with the Empire, but that he had a quarrel with Þiuða-reð, king of the Visigoths.
Unde quum excipi libenter optaret, ceteram epistulam usitatis salutationum blandimentis oppleverat, studens fidem adhibere mendacio.	As he wished to be kindly received, he filled the rest of the letter with the usual flattering salutations, striving to win credence for his falsehood.
186	
Pari etiam modo ad regem Wisigotharum Theoderidum dirigit scripta, hortans, ut a Romanorum societate discederet recordareturque proelia, quae paulo ante contra eum fuerant concitata.	In like manner he despatched a message to Þiuða-reð, king of the Visigoths, urging him to break his alliance with the Romans and reminding him of the battles to which they had recently provoked him.
Sub nimia feritate homo subtilis ante quam bella gereret arte pugnabat.	Beneath his great ferocity he was a subtle man, and fought with craft before he made war.
Tunc Valentinianus Imperator ad Wisigothas eorumque regem Theoderidum in his verbis legationem direxit:	Then the Emperor Valentinian sent an embassy to the Visigoths and their king Þiuða-reð, with this message:
187	
"Prudentiae vestrae est, fortissime gentium, adversus orbis conspirare tyrannum, qui optat mundi generale habere servitium, qui causas proelii non	"Bravest of nations, it is the part of prudence for us to unite against the lord of the earth who wishes to enslave the whole world; who requires no just cause for battle,

requirit, sed, quicquid commiserit, hoc putat esse legitimum, ambitum suum bracchio metitur, superbiam licentia satiat; qui jus fasque contemnens, hostem se exhibet et naturae.	but supposes whatever he does is right. He measures his ambition by his might. License satisfies his pride. Despising law and right, he shows himself an enemy to Nature herself.
Cunctorum etenim meretur hic odium, qui in commune omnium se approbat inimicum.	And thus he, who clearly is the common foe of each, deserves the hatred of all.
188	
Recordamini, quaeso, quod certe non potest oblivisci: ab Hunnis non per bella, ubi communis casus est, fusum me, sed, quod graviter angit, insidiis appetitum; ut de nobis taceamus, potestis hanc inulti ferre superbiam?	Pray remember what, surely, cannot be forgotten: the Huns did not rout you by means of war, where there is an equal chance, but instead - which is all the more cause for alarm - by means of a sneak attack. To say nothing about ourselves, can you suffer such insolence to go unpunished?
Armorum potentes, favete propriis doloribus et communes jungite manus.	Since you are mighty in arms, give heed to your own danger and join hands with us in common.
Auxiliamini etiam rei publicae, cujus membrum tenetis.	Bear aid also to the Empire, of which you hold a part.
Quam sit autem nobis expetenda vel amplexanda societas, hostis interrogate consilia. "	As for how such an alliance should be sought and welcomed by us, look into the plans of the foe. "
189	
His et similibus legati Valentiniani regem permoverunt Theodoridum.	By these and like arguments the ambassadors of Valentinian prevailed upon King Þiuða- reð.
Quibus ille respondit: "Habetis," inquit, "Romani, desiderium vestrum; fecistis Attilam et nobis hostem.	He answered them, saying: "Romans, you have attained your desire; you have made Attila our foe also.
Sequimur illum quocunque vocaverit, et quamvis infletur de diversis gentium victoriis, norunt	We will pursue him wherever he summons us, and though he is puffed up by his victories over

tamen Gothi configere cum superbis.	diverse races, yet the Goths know how to fight haughty foes.
Nullum bellum dixerim grave, nisi quod causa debilitat; quando nil triste pavet, cui Majestas arriserit. "	I call no war dangerous save one whose cause is weak; for he fears no ill on whom Majesty has smiled. "
190	
Acclamant responso comites ducis, laetum sequitur vulgus.	The nobles shouted assent to the reply and the multitude gladly followed.
Fit omnibus ambitus pugnae, hostes jam Hunni desiderantur.	All were fierce for battle and longed to meet the Huns, their foe.
Producitur itaque a rege Theodredo Wisigotharum innumerabilis multitudo; qui, quattuor filiis domi dimissis, id est Friderico et Euricho, Retemere et Innerith, secum tantum Thorismud et Theodericum majores natu participes laboris assumit.	And so a countless host was led forth by Þiuða-reð, king of the Visigoths, who sent home four of his sons, namely Friþa-reik {"Peace-ruler"} and Aiwa-reik {"Time-ruler," "Ruler of ages"}, Riqi-mer {"Darkness-famed," "Dark-renown"} and Ibna-reð {"Even(handed)-counsel," "Level (= unbiased)-advisor"}, taking with him only the two elder sons, Þaúris-moð {"Daring-mood"} and Þiuða-reik {"People-ruler," "Prince over the folk"}, as partners of his toil.
Felix procinctum, auxilium tutum, suave collegium, habere solacia illorum, quos delectat ipsa etiam simul subire discrimina!	O brave array, sure defense and sweet comradeship, having the aid of those who delight to share in the same dangers!
191	
A parte vero Romanorum, tanta Patricii Aëtii providentia fuit, cui tunc innitebatur res publica Hesperiae plagae, ut, undique bellatoribus congregatis, adversus ferocem et infinitam multitudinem non impar occurreret.	On the side of the Romans stood the Patrician Aëtius, on whom at that time the whole Western Empire depended: a man of such wisdom that he had assembled warriors from everywhere to meet them on equal terms.
Hi enim affuerunt auxiliares: Franci, Sarmatae, Armorici, Liticiani, Burgundiones, Saxones, Riparii, Olibriones (quondam milites Romani, tunc vero jam in numero auxiliorum exquisiti),	Now these were his auxiliaries: Franks {the "Free," "Bold," "Impetuous," "Impudent"}, Sarmatians, Armoricians, Liticians, Baúrgundjans {Burgundians,

aliaeque nonnullae Celticae vel Germanicae nationes.	"Fortress-dwellers"}, Saxons {"Short-sword [sahs] bearers"}, Riparians, Olibriones (once Roman soldiers and now the flower of the allied forces), and some other Celtic or Germanic tribes.
192	
Convenitur itaque in Campis Catalaunicis, qui et Mauriaci nominantur, centum "leugas," ut Galli vocant, in longo tenentes et septuaginta in lato.	And so they met in the Catalaunian Plains {ca. 90 miles/145 km SE of Paris, near Augustobona, modern Troyes}, which are also called Mauriacian, extending in length one hundred "leagues," as the Gauls say, and seventy in width.
"Leuga " autem Gallica una mille et quingentorum passuum quantitate metitur.	Now a Gallic "league " {ca. 1.38 miles/2.22 km} measures a distance of fifteen hundred paces.
Fit ergo area innumerabilium populorum pars illa terrarum.	That portion of the earth accordingly became the threshing floor of countless races
Conseruntur acies utraeque fortissimae: nihil surreptionibus agitur, sed aperto Marte certatur.	The two hosts bravely joined battle. Nothing was done under cover, but they contended in open fight.
193	
Quae potest digna causa tantorum motibus inveniri? Aut quod odium in se cunctos animavit armari?	What just cause can be found for the mobilization of so many nations, or what hatred inspired them all to take arms against each other?
Probatum est humanum genus regibus vivere, quando unius mentis insano impetu strages sit facta populorum, et arbitrio superbi regis, momento defecerit quod tot saeculis natura progeniuit.	It is proof that the human race lives for its kings, for it is at the mad impulse of one mind that a slaughter of nations takes place, and at the whim of a haughty ruler that which nature has taken ages to produce perishes in a moment.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXXVII</p> <p style="text-align: center;">194</p>	
Sed antequam pugnae ipsius ordinem referamus, necessarium videtur edicere, quae in ipsis bellorum motibus acciderunt, quia sicut famosum proelium, ita multiplex atque perplexum.	But before we set forth the order of the battle itself, it seems important to relate what had already happened in the course of the campaign, for it was as complicated and confused a struggle as it was famous.
Sangibanus namque rex Alanorum, metu	Well then, Sangiban, king of the Alani,

futurorum perterritus, Attilae se tradere pollicetur et Aurelianam, civitatem Galliae, ubi tunc consistebat, in ejus jura traducere.	smitten with fear of what might come to pass, had promised to surrender to Attila, and to hand over to his possession Orleans {about 60 miles/100 km south of Paris}, a city of Gaul wherein he dwelt.
195	
Quod ubi Theodorus et Aëtius cognoverunt, magnis aggeribus eandem urbem ante adventum Attilae struunt, suspectumque custodiunt Sangibanum et inter suos auxiliares medium statuunt cum propria gente.	When Þiuða-reð and Aëtius learned of this, they cast up great earthworks around that city before Attila's arrival and kept watch over the suspected Sangiban, placing him with his tribe in the midst of their auxiliaries.
Igitur Attila rex Hunnorum, tali percussus eventu, diffidens suis copiis metuit inire conflictum; inter quae fugam revolvens ipso funere tristiores, statuit per haruspices futura inquirere.	Then Attila, king of the Huns, was taken aback by this event and lost confidence in his own troops, so that he feared to begin the conflict. While he was meditating on flight - a greater calamity than death itself - he decided to inquire into the future through soothsayers.
196	
Qui more solito nunc pecorum fibras, nunc quasdam venas in abrasis ossibus intuentes, Hunnis infausta denuntiant; hoc tamen quantulum praedixere solacii, quod summus hostium dux de parte adversa occumberet, relictaque victoria, sua morte triumphum foedaret.	So, as was their custom, they examined the entrails of cattle and certain streaks in bones that had been scraped, and foretold disaster to the Huns. Yet as a slight consolation they prophesied that the chief commander of the foe they were to meet should fall and, having left the victory, should mar the triumph by his death .
Quumque Attila necem Aëtii, quod ejus motibus obviabat, vel cum sua perditione, duceret expetendam, tali praesagio sollicitus, ut erat consiliorum in rebus bellicis exquisitor, circa nonam diei horam proelium sub trepidatione committit, ut, si secus cederet, nox imminens subveniret.	Now Attila deemed the death of Aëtius a thing to be desired even at the cost of his own life, for Aëtius blocked his aims. So although he was disturbed by this prophecy, yet inasmuch as he was a man who sought counsel of omens in all warfare, he began the battle with anxious heart at about the ninth hour of the day, in order that the impending darkness might come to his aid if the outcome should be disastrous.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXXVIII</p> <p style="text-align: center;">197</p>	
Convenere partes, ut diximus, in campos	The armies met, as we have said, in the

Catalaunicos.	Catalaunian Plains.
Erat autem positio loci declivi tumore in editum collis excrescens. Quem uterque cupiens exercitus obtinere, quia loci opportunitas non parvum beneficium confert, dextram partem Hunni cum suis, sinistram Romani et Wisigothae cum auxiliariis occuparunt; relictoque jugo de cacumine ejus certamen ineunt.	The battlefield terrain rose in a steep bulge to a hilltop, which both armies sought to gain; for advantage of position is a great help. The Huns with their forces seized the right side, the Romans, the Visigoths and their allies the left, and then, having finished with the slope, they began a struggle for its crest.
Dextrum itaque cornu cum Wisigothis Theoderidus tenebat, sinistrum Aëtius cum Romanis, collocantes in medio Sangibanum, quem superius rettulimus praefuisse Alanis, providentes cautione militari, ut eum, de cujus animo minus praesumebant, fidelium turba concluderent.	Now Þiuða-reð with the Visigoths held the right wing and Aëtius with the Romans the left. They placed in the center Sangiban (who, as said before, was in command of the Alani), thus contriving with military caution to surround by a host of faithful troops the man in whose loyalty they had little confidence.
Facile namque assumit pugnandi necessitatem, cui fugiendi imponitur difficultas.	For one who has difficulties placed in the way of his flight readily submits to the necessity of fighting.
198	
E diverso vero fuit Hunnorum acies ordinata, ut in medio Attila cum suis fortissimis locaretur, sibi potius rex hac ordinatione prospiciens, quatenus inter gentis suae robur positus ab imminente periculo redderetur exceptus.	On the other side, however, the battle line of the Huns was arranged so that Attila and his bravest followers were stationed in the center. In arranging them thus the king had chiefly his own safety in view, since by his position amidst the elite troops of his race he would be kept out of the way of threatening danger.
Cornua vero ejus multiplices populi et diversae nationes, quas dicioni suae subdiderat, ambiebant.	The innumerable peoples of the diverse tribes which he had subjected to his sway formed the wings.
199	
Inter quas Ostrogotharum praeeminebat exercitus, Walamere et Theudemere et Widimere germanis ductantibus, ipso etiam rege, cui tunc serviebant, nobilioribus, quia Amalorum generis eos potentia illustrabat;	Amid them was conspicuous the army of the Ostrogoths under the leadership of the brothers Wala-mer {"Beloved famous one"}, Þiuði-mer {"People-famed"} and Wiði-mer {"Forest-fame"}, nobler even than the king they served, for the might of the family of the Amals rendered them glorious.

eratque et Gepidarum agmini innumerabilium rex ille famosissimus Ardaricus, qui ob nimiam suam fidelitatem erga Attilam ejus consiliis intererat.	The renowned king of the Gibiðos {"The Givers"}, Arðā-reik {"Earth-ruler," "Home-ground ruler"}, was there also with a countless host, and because of his great loyalty to Attila, he shared his plans.
Nam perpendens Attila sagacitate ejus, eum et Wala-merem, Ostrogotharum regem, super ceteros regulos diligebat.	For Attila, comparing them in his keen mind, prized him and Wala-mer, king of the Ostrogoths, above all the other chieftains.
200	
Erat namque Walamer secreti tenax, blandus alloquio, dolis gnarus; Ardaricus fide et consilio, ut diximus, clarus. Quibus non immerito contra parentes Wisigothas debuit credere pugnaturis.	Wala-mer was a good keeper of secrets, bland of speech and skilled in wiles, and Arðā-reik, as we have said, was famed for his loyalty and wisdom. Attila might well feel sure that they would fight against the Visigoths, their kinsmen.
Reliqua autem, si dici fas est, turba regum diversarumque nationum ductores ac si satellites nutibus Attilae attendebant, et ubi oculo annuisset, absque aliqua murmuratione cum timore et tremore unusquisque astabat, aut certe, quod jussus fuerat exsequebatur.	Now the rest of the crowd of kings (if we may call them so) and the leaders of various nations hung upon Attila's nod like slaves, and when he gave a sign even by a glance, without a murmur each stood forth in fear and trembling, or at all events did as he was bid.
201	
Solus Attila rex omnium regum super omnes et pro omnibus sollicitus erat.	Attila alone was king of all kings over all and concerned for all.
Fit ergo de loci, quem diximus, opportunitate certamen.	So then the struggle began for the advantage of position we have mentioned.
Attila suos dirigit, qui cacumen montis invaderent. Sed a Thorismudo et Aëtio praevenitur, qui, eluctati collis excelsa ut conscenderant, superiores effecti sunt, venientesque Hunnos montis beneficio facile turbaverunt.	Attila sent his men to take the summit of the mountain, but was outstripped by Þaúris- moð {"Daring mood"} and Aëtius, who in their effort to gain the top of the hill reached higher ground and through this advantage of position easily routed the Huns as they came up.
<p style="text-align: center;">XXXIX</p> <p style="text-align: center;">202</p>	
Tunc Attila cum videret exercitum causa praecedente turbatum, tali eum ex tempore credidit alloquio confirmandum: "Post victorias tantarum gentium, post	Now when Attila saw his army was thrown into confusion by this event, he thought it best to encourage them by an extemporaneous address of this kind: "If,

orbem, si consistatis, edomitum, ineptum judicaverim tamquam ignaros rei verbis acuere. Quaerat hoc aut novus ductor aut inexpertus exercitus.	after victories over such great peoples, after having subdued the world, you should come to a halt, I would have thought it foolish to goad you with words as though you did not know what is at stake. Let a new leader or an untried army resort to that.
203	
"Nec mihi fas est aliquid vulgare dicere, nec vos oportet audire. Quid autem aliud vobis quam bellare consuetum? Aut quid viro forti suavius, quam vindictam manu quaerere? Magnum munus a natura animos ultione satiare.	"Likewise it is not right for me to say anything banal, nor ought you to listen. For what is war but your usual custom? Or what is sweeter for a brave man than to seek revenge with his own hand? It is a great gift of nature to sate the soul with vengeance.
204	
"Aggrediamur igitur hostem alacres; audaciores sunt semper, qui inferunt bellum. Adunatas despiciate dissonas gentes! Indicium pavoris est societate defendi. En ante impetum nostrum terroribus jam feruntur: excelsa quaerunt, tumulos capiunt et, sera paenitudine, in campis munitiones efflagitant. Notum est vobis quam sint levia Romanorum arma: primo etiam non dicam vulnere, sed ipso pulvere gravantur, dum in ordine coeunt et acies testudinesque conectunt.	"Let us then attack the foe eagerly; for they are ever the bolder who make the attack. Despise this union of discordant races! To defend oneself by alliance is proof of cowardice. See, even before our attack they are smitten with terror. They seek the heights, they seize the hills and, repenting too late, clamor for cover in the open fields. You know how slight a matter the Roman attack is. While they are still gathering in order and forming in one line with locked shields, they are checked, I will not say by the first wound, but even by the dust of battle.
205	
"Vos confligite perstantibus animis, ut soletis, despicientesque eorum aciem Alanos invadite, in Visigothas	"Then on to the fray with resolute hearts, as is your wont. Despise their battle line. Attack the Alans, smite the Visigoths! Seek swift

<p>incumbite! Inde nobis citam victoriam quaerere, unde se continet bellum. Abscisis enim nervis mox membra relabuntur; nec potest stare corpus, cui ossa subtraxeris. Consurgant animi, furor solitus intumescat. Nunc consilia, Hunni, nunc arma depromite: aut vulneratus quis adversarii mortem reposcat aut illaesus hostium clade satietur.</p>	<p>victory in that spot where the battle rages. For when the sinews are cut the limbs soon drop, nor can a body stand when you have removed the bones. Let your courage rise and your own fury burst forth! Show now your cunning, Huns, now your deeds of arms! Let the wounded exact in return the death of his foe; let the unwounded revel in slaughter of the enemy.</p>
<p>206</p>	
<p>"Victuris nulla tela conveniunt, morituros et in otio fata praecipitant. Postremo cur fortuna Hunnos tot gentium victores assereret, nisi ad certaminis hujus gaudia praeparasset? Quis denique Maeotidarum iter majoribus nostris aperuit tot saeculis clausum secretum? Quis adhuc inermibus cedere faciebat armatos? Faciem Hunnorum non poterat ferre adunata collectio. Non fallor eventu: hic campus est, quem nobis tot prospera promiserunt. Primus in hostem tela conjiciam. Si quis potuerit Attila pugnante otium ferre, sepultus est." His verbis accensi, in pugnam cuncti praecipitantur.</p>	<p>"No spear shall harm those who are sure to live; and those who are sure to die Fate overtakes even in peace. And finally, why would Fortune have made the Huns victorious over so many nations, unless it were to prepare them for the joy of this conflict? Who was it revealed to our forefathers the path through the Maeotian swamp, for so many ages a closed secret? Who, moreover, made armed men yield to you, when you were as yet unarmed? Even a mass of federated nations could not endure the sight of the Huns. I am not deceived in the issue; - here is the field so many victories have promised us. I shall hurl the first spear at the foe. If any can endure rest while Attila fights, he is a dead man." Inflamed by these words, they all dashed into battle.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">XL 207</p>	
<p>Et quamvis haberent res ipse formidinem, praesentia tamen regis cunctationem morantibus auferebat. Manu manibus</p>	<p>And although the situation was itself fearful, yet the presence of their king dispelled delay in those who had been tarrying. Hand to</p>

congregiuntur; bellum atrox multiplex immane pertinax, cui simile nulla usquam narrat antiquitas, ubi talia gesta referuntur, ut nihil esset, quod in vita sua conspiciere potuisset egregius, qui hujus miraculi privaretur aspectu.	hand they clashed in battle, and the fight grew fierce, confused, monstrous, unrelenting -- a fight whose like no ancient time has ever recorded. There such deeds were done that a brave man who missed this marvelous spectacle could not hope to see anything so wonderful all his life long.
208	
Nam, si senioribus credere fas est, rivulus memorati campi humili ripa praelabens, peremptorum vulneribus sanguine multo proventus est, non auctus imbribus, ut solebat, sed liquore concitatus insolito torrens factus est cruoris augmento.	For, if we may believe our elders, a brook flowing between low banks through the plain was greatly increased by blood from the wounds of the slain. It was not flooded by showers, as brooks usually rise, but was swollen by a strange stream and turned into a rapid torrent by the increase of blood.
Et quos illic coegit in aridam sitim vulnus inflictum, fluenta mixta clade traxerunt: ita constricti sorte miserabili, sorbebant potantes sanguinem quem fuderant sauciati.	Those whose wounds drove them to slake their parching thirst drank water mingled with gore. In their wretched plight the drinkers were forced to imbibe the blood they had poured from their own wounds.
209	
Hic Theodorus rex dum adhortans discurrit per exercitum, equo depulsus pedibusque suorum conculcatus vitam maturae senectutis conclusit.	At this point King Þiuða-reð, while dashing around through his army encouraging them, was thrown from his horse and trampled under foot by his own men, thus ending his days at a ripe old age.
Alii vero dicunt eum interfectum telo Andagis de parte Ostrogotharum, qui tunc Attilae sequebantur regimen.	But others say he was slain by the spear of Anda-gis {"Endpoint (of)-spear," "Spearpoint"} of the host of the Ostrogoths, who were then under the sway of Attila.
Hoc fuit quod Attilae praesagio haruspices prius dixerant, quamvis ille de Aëtio suspicaretur.	This was what the soothsayers had earlier told to Attila in prophecy, even though he had understood it of Aëtius.
210	
Tunc Wisigothae, dividentes se ab Alanis, invadunt Hunnorum catervam et paene Attilam trucidarent, nisi providus prius fugisset et se suosque ilico intra saepta castrorum, quae plaustris vallata habebat,	Then the Visigoths, separating from the Alans, fell upon the horde of the Huns and, indeed, would have slain Attila, had he not first prudently taken flight and immediately shut himself and his companions within the

reclusisset;	barriers of the camp, which he had fortified with wagons.
quamvis fragili munimine, eo tamen quaesierunt subsidium vitae, quibus paulo ante nullus poterat muralis agger obsistere.	A frail defense indeed; yet there they sought refuge for their lives, whom but a little while before no earthen walls could withstand.
211	
Thorismud autem, regis Theodoridi filius, qui cum Aëtio collem anticipans hostes de superiori loco proturbaverat, credens se ad agmina propria pervenire, nocte caeca ad hostium carpenta ignarus incurrit.	But Þaúris-moð, the son of King Þiuða-reð, who with Aëtius had seized the hill and repulsed the enemy from the higher ground, unwittingly ran into the wagons of the enemy in the darkness of night, thinking he had reached his own lines.
Quem fortiter dimicantem quidam capite vulnerato equo dejecit, suorumque providentia liberatus a proeliandi contentione desivit.	As he was fighting bravely, wounded in the head, someone dislodged him from his horse. Then he was rescued by the watchful care of his followers and withdrew from the fierce conflict.
212	
Aëtius vero similiter noctis confusione divisus quum inter hostes medius vagaretur, trepidus ne quid incidisset adversi, Gothos inquit, tandemque ad socia castra perveniens, reliquum noctis scutorum defensione transegit.	Aëtius also became separated from his men in the confusion of night and wandered about in the midst of the enemy. Fearing disaster had happened, he went about in search of the Goths. At last he reached the camp of his allies and passed the remainder of the night in the protection of their shields.
Postera die luce orta quum tumulatos cadaveribus campos aspicerent nec audere Hunnos erumpere, suam arbitrantur esse victoriam, scientesque Attilam non nisi magna clade confossum bella defugere, quum tamen nil ageret, velut prostratus, abjectum, sed, strepens armis, tubis canebat incursionemque minabatur, velut leo venabulis pressus, speluncae aditus obambulans, nec audet insurgere, nec desinit fremitibus vicina terrere.	At dawn on the following day, when the Romans saw the fields were piled high with bodies and that the Huns did not venture forth, they thought the victory was theirs, but knew that Attila would not flee from the battle unless overwhelmed by a great disaster. Yet he did nothing cowardly, like one that is overcome, but with clash of arms sounded the trumpets and threatened an attack. He was like a lion pierced by hunting spears, who paces to and fro before the mouth of his den and neither dares to spring nor ceases to terrify the surroundings by his roaring.
Sic bellicosissimus rex victores suos turbabat inclusus.	Thus even at bay this warlike king terrified his conquerors.

213	
Conveniunt itaque Gothi Romanique et quid agerent de superato Attila, deliberant.	Therefore the Goths and Romans assembled and considered what to do with the vanquished Attila.
Placet eum obsidione fatigari, quia annonae copiam non habebat, quando ab ipsorum sagittariis intra saepta castrorum locatis, crebris ictibus arceretur accessus.	They determined to wear him out by a siege, because he had no supply of provisions and was hindered from approaching by a shower of arrows from the bowmen placed within the confines of the Roman camp.
Fertur autem desperatis rebus praedictum regem, adhuc et supremo magnanimum, equinis sellis construxisse pyram seseque, si adversarii irrumperent, flammis injicere voluisse, ne aut aliquis ejus vulnere laetaretur aut in potestatem hostium tantarum gentium dominus perveniret.	But it was said that in these desperate circumstances the king, heroically brave even to the last, had heaped up a pyre of horse saddles, and intended, if the enemy attacked, to throw himself into the flames, so that none might have the joy of wounding him and that the lord of so many races might not fall into the hands of his foes.
<p style="text-align: center;">XLI</p> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">214</p>	
Verum inter has obsidionum moras, Wisigothae regem, filii patrem requirunt, admirantes ejus absentiam, dum felicitas fuerit subsecuta.	Now during these delays in the siege, the Visigoths sought their king and the king's sons their father, wondering at his absence when success had been attained.
Cumque diutius exploratum, ut viris fortibus mos est, inter densissima cadavera repperissent, cantibus honoratum inimicis spectantibus abstulerunt.	When, after a long search, they found him where the dead lay thickest, as happens with brave men, they honored him with songs and bore him away in the sight of the enemy.
Videres Gothorum globos dissonis vocibus confragosos inter bella adhuc furentia funeri reddidisse culturam.	You might have seen bands of Goths shouting with dissonant cries and rendering the last rites to the body while the battle still raged.
Fundebantur lacrimae, sed quae viris fortibus impendi solent.	Tears were shed, but the kind that were customarily shed for brave men.
Nam mors erat, sed Hunno teste gloriosa, unde hostium putaretur inclinatum fore superbiam, quando tanti regis efferri cadaver cum suis insignibus conspiciebant.	It was death indeed, but the Huns are witness that it was a glorious one. It was a death whereby one might well suppose the pride of the enemy would be lowered, when they beheld the body of so great a king borne forth with his insignia.
215	

At Gothi Theodorido adhuc justa solventes, armis insonantibus, regiam deferunt majestatem, fortissimusque Thorismud bene gloriosos manes carissimi patris, ut decebat filium, patris exsequias prosecutus est.	And so the Goths, still continuing the rites due to Þiuða-reð, bore forth the royal majesty with sounding arms, and valiant Þaúris-moð, as befitted a son, escorted his beloved father's glorious soul on its way, his father's funeral procession.
Quod postquam peractum est, orbitatis dolore commotus et virtutis impetu, qua valebat, dum in reliquis Hunnorum, mortem patris vindicare contendit, Aëtium patricium ac si seniore prudentiaque maturum de hac parte consuluit, quid sibi esset in tempore faciendum.	When this was done, Þaúris-moð was eager to take vengeance for his father's death on the remaining Huns, being moved to this both by the pain of bereavement and the impulse of that valor for which he was noted. Yet he consulted with the Patrician Aëtius (for he was an older man and of more mature wisdom) with regard to what he ought to do next.
216	
Ille vero metuens ne, Hunnis funditus interemptis, a Gothis Romanum premeretur imperium, praebebat hac suasionem consilium, ut ad sedes proprias remearet regnumque, quod pater reliquerat, arriperet, ne germani ejus, opibus assumptis paternis, Wisigotharum regnum invaderent graviterque dehinc cum suis et, quod pejus est, miseriterque pugnaret.	But Aëtius feared that if the Huns were totally destroyed by the Goths, the Roman Empire would be overwhelmed, and urgently advised him to return to his own dominions to take up the rule which his father had left. Otherwise his brothers might seize their father's possessions and obtain the power over the Visigoths. In this case Þaúris-moð would have to fight fiercely and, what is worse, unsuccessfully, with his own countrymen.
Quo responso non ambigue, ut datum est, sed pro sua potius utilitate suscepto, relictis Hunnis rediit ad Gallias.	Þaúris-moð accepted the advice without perceiving its double meaning, but as meant for his own good. So he left the Huns and returned to Gaul.
217	
Sic humana fragilitas, dum suspicionibus occurrit, magnarum plerumque agendarum rerum occasionem intercipit.	Thus when human frailty moves to counteract its suspicions, it often cuts short the opportunity to do great things.
In hoc enim famosissimo et fortissimarum gentium bello ab utrisque partibus CLXV milia {= centum sexaginta quinque milia = 165,000} caesa referuntur, exceptis quindecim milibus Gepidarum et Francorum, qui ante congressionem publicam noctu sibi occurrentes mutuis	In this most famous war of the bravest tribes, one hundred and sixty five thousand are said to have been slain on both sides, not counting fifteen thousand of the Gibiðos and Franks, who met each other the night before the general engagement and fell by wounds mutually received, the Franks fighting for

concidere vulneribus, Francis pro Romanorum, Gepidis pro Hunnorum parte pugnantis.	the Romans and the Gibiðos for the Huns.
218	
Attila igitur, cognita discessione Gothorum, quod de inopinatis colligi solet, inimicorum magis aestimans dolum, diutius se intra castra continuit.	Now when Attila learned of the retreat of the Goths, he thought it a ruse of the enemy, - for so men are wont to believe when the unexpected happens - and remained for some time in his camp.
Sed ubi hostium absentiam sunt longa silentia consecuta, erigitur mens ad victoriam, gaudia praesumuntur atque potentis regis animus in antiqua fata revertitur.	But when a long silence followed the absence of the foe, the spirit of the mighty king was aroused to the thought of victory and the anticipation of pleasure, and his mind turned to the old oracles of his destiny.
Thorismud ergo, patre mortuo in campis statim Catalaunicis, ubi et pugnaverat, regia maiestate subvectus Tolosam ingreditur.	Þaúris-moð, however, after the death of his father on the Catalaunian Plains where he had fought, advanced in royal state and entered Toulouse.
Hic, licet fratrum et fortium turba gauderet, ipse tamen sic sua initia moderatus est, ut nullius repperiret de regni successionem certamen.	Here, although he enjoyed a throng of brave brethren, he yet began to rule so mildly that no one competed with him for the succession to the kingdom.
<p style="text-align: center;">XLII</p> <p style="text-align: center;">219</p>	
Attila vero, nanta occasione de secessu Wisigotharum, et, quod saepe optaverat, cernens hostium solutionem per partes, mox jam securus ad oppressionem Romanorum movit procinctum, primaque aggressionem Aquilejensem obsidet civitatem, quae est metropolis Venetiarum, in mucrone vel lingua Hadriatici posita Sinus, cujus ab oriente muros Natissa amnis fluens a monte Piccis elambit.	But Attila exploited the opportunity of the Visigoths' departure, observing what he had often desired - the breakup of his enemies. Later on {in 452 C.E.}, feeling secure, he moved forward his battle formations to attack the Romans. As his first move he besieged the city of Aquileja, the metropolis of Venetia, which is situated on a point or tongue of land in the Adriatic Gulf. On the eastern side its walls are washed by the river Natissa {= modern Natisone}, flowing from Mount Piccis.
220	
Ibique quum diu multumque obsidens nihil penitus praevaleret, fortissimis intrinsecus Romanorum militibus resistentibus,	The siege was long and fierce, but of no avail, since the bravest soldiers of the Romans withstood him from within. At last

exercitu jam murmurante et discedere cupiente, Attila deambulans circa muros, dum utrum solveret castra an adhuc remoraretur deliberat, animadvertit candidas aves, id est ciconias, quae in fastigiis domorum nidificant, de civitate fetus suos trahere atque contra morem per rura forinsecus comportare.	his army was discontented and eager to withdraw. Attila chanced to be walking around the walls, considering whether to break camp or delay longer, and noticed that the white birds, namely, the storks, who build their nests in the gables of houses, were bearing their young from the city and, contrary to their custom, were carrying them out into the country.
221	
Et ut erat sagacissimus inquisitor, praesensit et ad suos "Respicite," inquit, "aves futurarum rerum providas perituram relinquere civitatem casurasque arces periculo imminente deserere. Non hoc vacuum, non hoc credatur incertum; rebus praesciis consuetudinem mutat ventura formido."	Being a shrewd observer of events, he understood this omen and said to his soldiers: "You see the birds foresee the future. They are leaving the city sure to perish and are forsaking strongholds doomed to fall by reason of imminent peril. Do not think this a meaningless or uncertain sign; fear, arising from the things they foresee, has changed their custom."
Quid plura? Animos suorum rursus ad oppugnandam Aquilejam inflamat.	Why say more? He inflamed the hearts of his soldiers to attack Aquileja again.
Qui, machinis constructis omnibusque generibus tormentorum adhibitis, nec mora et invadunt civitatem, spoliant, dividunt vastantque crudeliter, ita ut vix ejus vestigia ut appareant reliquerunt.	Constructing battering rams and bringing to bear all manner of engines of war, they quickly forced their way into the city, laid it waste, divided the spoil and so cruelly devastated it as scarcely to leave a trace to be seen.
222	
Exhinc jam audaciores et necdum Romanorum sanguine satiati per reliquas Venetum civitates Hunni bacchantur.	Then growing bolder and still thirsting for Roman blood, the Huns raged madly through the remaining cities of the Veneti.
Mediolanum quoque Liguriaie metropolim et quondam regiam urbem pari tenore devastant nec non Ticinum aequali sorte dejiciunt vicinaque loca saevientes allidunt demoliunturque paene totam Italiam.	They also laid waste Mediolanum {= modern Milan}, the metropolis of Liguria, once an imperial city, and gave over Ticinum {= modern Pavia} to a like fate. Then they destroyed the neighboring places in their frenzy and demolished almost the whole of Italy.

Quumque ad Romam animus fuisset ejus attentus accedere, sui eum, ut Priscus historicus refert, removerunt, non urbi, cui inimici erant, consulentes, sed Alarici quondam Wisigotharum regis objicientes exemplum, veriti regis sui fortunam, quia ille post fractam Romam non diu supervixerit, sed protinus rebus humanis excesserit.	Attila's mind had been bent on going to Rome. But his followers, as the historian Priscus relates, deterred him, not out of regard for the city to which they were hostile, but because they remembered the case of Ala-reik, the former king of the Visigoths. They distrusted the good fortune of their own king, inasmuch as Ala-reik had not lived long after the sack of Rome, but had right away departed this life.
--	--

223

Igitur dum ejus animus ancipiti negotio inter ire et non ire fluctuaret secumque deliberans tardaret, placida ei legatio a Roma advenit.	Therefore while Attila's spirit was wavering in doubt between going and not going, and he still lingered to ponder the matter, an embassy came to him from Rome to seek peace.
--	--

Nam Leo papa per se ad eum accedit in agro Venetum Ambulejo, ubi Mincius amnis commeantium frequentatione transitur.	Pope Leo himself came to meet him in the Ambuleian district of the Veneti at the well-traveled ford of the river Mincius.
--	---

Qui mox deposuit exercitatum furorem et rediens, quo venerat, iter, ultra Danubium promissa pace discessit, illud prae omnibus denuntians atque interminando decernens, graviora se Italiae illaturum, nisi ad se Honoriā, Valentiniani principis germanam, filiam Placidiae Augustae, cum portione sibi regalium opum debita mitterent.	Then Attila quickly put aside his usual fury, turned back on the way he had advanced from beyond the Danube and departed with the promise of peace. But above all he declared and avowed with threats that he would bring worse things upon Italy, unless they sent him Honoria {Justa Grata Honoria, 417/418-until after 451 C.E.; "Augusta" (Empress) from 425}, the sister of the Emperor Valentinian {III; Emperor of the West, 425-455} and daughter of the Augusta {i.e., Empress} Placidia, with her due share of the royal wealth.
--	--

224

Ferebatur enim, quia haec Honoria, dum propter aulae decus ad castitatem teneretur nutu fratris inclusa, clam eunucho misso Attilam invitasset, ut contra fratris potentiam ejus patrociniis uteretur: prorsus indignum facinus, ut licentiam libidinis malo publico compararet.	For it was said that Honoria, although forced to chastity by being kept confined at her brother's order for the dignity of the imperial court, had secretly dispatched a eunuch to summon Attila that she might have his protection against her brother's power: a shameful thing, indeed, to get license for her
--	---

	passion at the cost of the public weal.
XLIII	
225	
Reversus itaque Attila in sedes suas et quasi otii paenitens graviterque ferens a bello cessare, ad Orientis principem Marcianum legatos dirigit, provinciarum testans vastationem, quod sibi promissum a Theodosio quondam imperatore minime persolveretur, et inhumanior solito suis hostibus appareret.	So Attila returned to his own country, seeming to regret the peace and to be vexed at the cessation of war. For he sent ambassadors to Marcian, Emperor of the East {450-457}, threatening to devastate the provinces, because that which had been promised him by Theodosius {II, 408-450}, a former emperor {of the East}, was not by any means being paid, and saying that he would show himself more cruel to his foes than ever.
Haec tamen agens, ut erat versutus et callidus, alibi minatus alibi arma sua commovit, et, quod restabat indignationis, faciem in Wisigothas convertit.	But being shrewd and crafty, he threatened in one direction and moved his army in another and - the other part of his antipathy - turned his attention to the Visigoths.
226	
Sed non eum, quem de Romanis, reportavit eventum.	But here he did not have the same success as against the Romans.
Nam per dissimiles anterioribus vias recurrens, Alanorum partem trans flumen Ligeris consistentem statuit suae redigere dicioni, quatenus mutata per ipsos belli facie, terribilior immineret.	Hastening back by a different way than before, he decided to reduce to his sway that part of the Alans settled on the other side of the river Loire, so that by changing the aspect of the war he might become a more fearsome menace to the Visigoths.
Igitur a Dacia et Pannonia provinciis, in quibus tunc Hunni cum diversis subditis nationibus insidebant, egrediens, Attila in Alanos movit procinctum.	Accordingly he started from the provinces of Dacia and Pannonia, where the Huns were then dwelling with various subject peoples, and moved his strike force against the Alans.
227	
Sed Thorismud rex Wisigotharum, fraudem Attilae non impari subtilitate praesentiens, ad Alanos tota velocitate prius advenit, ibique supervenientis Attilae motibus jam praeparatus occurrit, consertoque proelio paene simili eum tenore, ut prius in campis Catalaunicis, ab spe removet victoriae, fugatumque a	But Þaúris-moð, king of the Visigoths, with like quickness of thought perceived Attila's trick. By forced marches he reached the Alans ahead of him, and was there in time to check the already beginning maneuvers of the oncoming Attila. They joined battle in almost the same way as before at the Catalaunian Plains, and Thorismud dashed

partibus suis sine triumpho remittens in sedes proprias fugere compulit.	his hopes of victory, for he routed him and drove him from the land without a triumph, compelling him to flee to his own country.
Sic Attila, famosus et multarum victoriarum dominus, dum quaerit famam perditoris abjicere et quod prius a Wisigothis pertulerat abolere, geminata sustinuit ingloriosusque recessit.	Thus while Attila, the famous leader and lord of many victories, sought to blot out the fame of his destroyer and in this way to annul what he had suffered at the hands of the Visigoths, he met a second defeat and retreated ingloriously.
228	
Thorismud vero, repulsis ab Alanis Hunnorum catervis sine aliqua suorum laesione, Tolosam migravit, suorumque quietam pace composita, tertio anno regni sui aegrotans, dum sanguinem tollit de vena, ab Ascalc, suo cliente, inimico nuntiante arma subtracta, peremptus est.	Now after the bands of the Huns had been repulsed by the Alani, without any hurt to his own men, Þaúris-moð departed for Toulouse. There he established a settled peace for his people and in the third year of his reign fell sick. While letting blood from a vein, he was betrayed to his death by At-skalk {"At-hand Slave," "Personal Chamberlain"}, a client, who told his foes that his weapons were out of reach.
Una tamen manu, quam liberam habebat, scabellum tenens, sanguinis sui exstitit ultor, aliquantos insidiantes sibi exstinguens.	Yet grasping a foot-stool in the one hand he had free, he became the avenger of his own blood by slaying several of those that were lying in wait for him.
XLIV 229	
Post cujus decessum Theoderidus, germanus ejus, Wisigotharum in regnum succedens, id mox Riciarium Swavorum regem, cognatum suum, repperit inimicum.	After his death, his brother Þiuða-reð succeeded to the kingdom of the Visigoths and soon found that Riqi-harjis {"Dark-army," "Dark-battletroop," king 448-456} his kinsman, the king of the Swavi, was hostile to him.
Hic etenim Riciarius, affinitate Theoderidi praesumens, universam paene Hispaniam sibi credit occupandam, judicans opportunum tempus surreptioni, incomposita initia temptare regnantis.	For Riqi-harjis, presuming on his relationship to Þiuða-reð, believed that he might seize almost the whole of Spain, judging the time opportune for the strategem of putting the disordered beginning of the rulership to the test.
230	
Quibus antea Gallaecia et Lusitania sedes	The Swavi formerly occupied as their

fuere, quae in dextro latere Hispaniae per ripam Oceani porriguntur, habentes ab oriente Austrogoniam, ab occidente in promuntorio sacrum Scipionis Romani ducis monumentum, a septentrione Oceanum, a meridie Lusitaniam et fluvium Tagum qui, harenis suis permiscens auri metalla, trahit cum limi vilitate divitias.	country Gallaecia and Lusitania, which extend on the right side of Spain along the shore of Ocean. To the east is Austrogonia, to the west, on a promontory, is the sacred Monument of the Roman general Scipio, to the north Ocean, and to the south Lusitania and the Tagus {= modern Tago } river, which mingles golden grains in its sands and thus carries wealth in its worthless mud.
Exinde ergo exiens Riciarius, rex Swavorum, nititur totas Hispanias occupare.	So then Riqi-harjis, king of the Swavi, set forth and strove to seize the whole of Spain.
231	
Cui Theodorus, cognatus ejus, ut erat moderatus, legatos mittens, pacifice dixit, ut non solum recederet a finibus alienis, verum etiam nec temptare praesumeret, odium sibi tali ambitione acquirens.	Piuḏa-reḏ, his kinsman, a man of moderation, sent ambassadors to him and told him quietly that he must not only withdraw from the territories that were not his own, but further more that he should not presume to make such an attempt, as he was becoming hated for his ambition.
Ille vero animo praetumido ait: "Si hic murmuras et me venire causaris, Tolosam, ubi tu sedes, veniam; ibi, si vales, resiste."	But with arrogant spirit he replied: "If you murmur here and find fault with my coming, I shall come to Toulouse where you dwell. Resist me there, if you can."
His auditis aegre tulit Theodorus compacatusque cum ceteris gentibus arma movit in Swavos, Burgundionum quoque Gundiwichum et Hilpericum, reges auxilios, habens sibi devotos.	When he heard this, Piuḏa-reḏ was angry and, making a compact with all the other tribes, moved his array against the Swavi {456 C.E.}. He had as his close allies Gundi-weih {"Battle-combat"} and Hilpa-reik {"Helper-prince," "Powerful helper"}, kings of the Burgundians.
232	
Ventum est ad certamen juxta flumen Ulbium, quod inter Asturiam Hiberiamque praetermeat; consertoque proelio Theodericus cum Wisigothis, qui ex justa parte pugnabat, victor efficitur, Suavorum gentem paene cunctam usque ad internecionem prosternens.	They came to battle near the river Ulbius {= Urbicus, modern Obrego }, which flows between Asturia and Hiberia; and in the engagement Piuḏa-reḏ with the Visigoths, who fought for the right, came off victorious, overthrowing the entire tribe of the Suavi and almost exterminating them.

Quorum rex Riciarius, relicto infesto hoste, fugiens in navem conscendit, adversaque procella Tyrrheni hoste repercussus, Wisigotharum est manibus redditus. Miserabilis non differt mortem, quum elementa mutaverit.	Their king Riqi-harjis fled from the dread foe and embarked upon a ship. But he was beaten back by another foe, the adverse wind of the Tyrrhenian Sea, and so fell into the hands of the Visigoths. Thus though he changed from sea to land, the wretched man did not delay his death.
233	
Theoderidus vero victor existens, subactis pepercit nec ultra certamine saevire permisit, praeponens Swavis, quos subegerat, clientem proprium nomine Agiwulfum.	When Þiuða-reð had become the victor, he spared the conquered and did not suffer the rage of conflict to continue, but placed over the Swavi whom he had conquered one of his own retainers, named Agji-wulf {"Edge-wolf," i.e., "Swordblade wolf"}.
Qui, in brevi, animum praevaricatione Swavorum suasionibus commutans, neglexit imperata complere, potius tyrannica elatione superbiens credensque se ea virtute provinciam obtinere, qua dudum cum domino suo eam subegisset.	But Agji-wulf soon treacherously changed his mind, through the persuasion of the Swavi, and failed to fulfill his duty. For he was quite puffed up with tyrannical pride, believing he had obtained the province as a reward for the valor by which he and his lord had recently subjugated it.
Vir si quidem erat Warnorum stirpe genitus, longe a Gothici sanguinis nobilitate sejunctus, idcirco nec libertati studens nec patrono fidem servans.	Now he was a man born of the stock of the Warni {"the Wary," "those On Guard"}, far below the nobility of Gothic blood, and so was neither zealous for liberty nor faithful toward his patron.
234	
Quo comperto Theodoridus mox contra eum, qui eum de regno invaso dejicerent, destinavit.	As soon as Þiuða-reð heard of this, he sent forces to cast him out from the kingdom he had usurped.
Qui venientes sine mora, in primo eum certamine superantes, congruam factorum ejus ab eo exegerunt ultionem.	They came quickly and conquered him in the first battle, inflicting a punishment befitting his deeds.
Captus namque et suorum solacio destitutus, capite plectitur, sensitque tandem iratum, qui propitium dominum crediderat contemnendum.	For he was captured, taken from his friends and beheaded. Thus at last he was made aware of the wrath of the master he thought might be despised because he was kind.
Tunc Swavi rectoris sui interitum contuentes, locorum sacerdotes ad	Now when the Swavi beheld the death of their leader, they sent priests of their country

Theoderidum supplices direxerunt.	to Þiuða-reð as suppliants.
Quos ille pontificali reverentia suscipiens non solum impunitatem Swavorum indulsit, sed et ut sibi de suo genere principem constituerent, flexus pietate concessit.	He received them with the reverence due their office and not only granted the Swavi exemption from punishment, but was moved by compassion and allowed them to choose a ruler of their own race for themselves.
Quod et factum est, et Rimismundum sibi Swavi regulum ordinaverunt.	The Swavi did so, taking Rimis-mund {"Peaceful-protection," "Calm guard-arm"} as their prince.
His peractis paceque cunctis munitis, tertio decimo regni sui anno Theoderidus occubuit.	When this was done and peace was everywhere assured, Þiuða-reð died in the thirteenth year of his reign.
XLV 235	
Cui frater Eurichus praecupida festinatione succedens scaeva suspicione pulsatus est.	His brother Aiwa-reik succeeded him with such eager haste that he fell under dark suspicion.
Nam dum haec circa Wisigotharum gentem et alia nonnulla geruntur, Valentinianus Imperator dolo Maximi occisus est et ipse Maximus, tyrannico more, regnum invasit.	Now while these and various other matters were happening among the people of the Visigoths, the Emperor Valentinian {III, Emperor of the West} was slain {455 C.E.} by the treachery of {Petronius} Maximus, and Maximus himself, like a tyrant, usurped the rule.
Quod audiens Gaisaricus rex Wandalorum ab Africa armata classe in Italiam venit Romamque ingressus cuncta devastat.	Gaisa-reik, king of the Vandals, heard of this and came from Africa to Italy with ships of war, entered Rome and laid it waste.
Maximus vero fugiens, a quodam Urso, milite Romano, interemptus est.	Maximus fled and was slain {in 455} by a certain Ursus, a Roman soldier.
236	
Post quem, jussu Marciani Imperatoris Orientalis, Majorianus Occidentale suscepit imperium gubernandum.	After him Majorian {ruled 457-461} undertook the government of the Western Empire at the bidding of Marcian, Emperor of the East.
Sed et ipse non diu regnans, dum contra Alanos, qui Gallias infestabant, movisset procinctum, Dertona juxta fluvium Ira cognomento occiditur.	But he too ruled but a short time. For when he had moved his forces against the Alans who were harassing Gaul, he was killed at Dertona {modern Tortona, northwestern Italy} near the river

	named Ira.
Cujus locum Severus invasit, qui tertio anno imperii sui Romae obiit.	{Libius} Severus {ruled 461-465} succeeded him and died at Rome in the third year of his reign.
Quod cernens Leo Imperator, qui in Orientali regno Marciano successerat, Anthemium Patricium suum ordinans, Romae principem destinavit.	When the Emperor Leo, who had succeeded Marcian in the Eastern Empire, learned of this, he chose as emperor his Patrician Anthemius {467-472} and sent him to Rome.
Qui veniens ilico Ricimerem generum suum contra Alanos direxit, virum egregium et paene tunc in Italia ad exercitum singularem.	Upon his arrival he sent against the Alans his son-in-law Riqi-mer {"Darkness-famed," "Dark-renown"}, who was an excellent man and almost the only one in Italy at that time fit to command the army.
Qui et multitudinem Alanorum et regem eorum Beorgum in primo statim certamine superatus ad interneccionem prostravit.	In the very first engagement he conquered and destroyed the host of the Alans, together with their king, Beorg {464}.
237	
Euricus ergo, Wisigotharum rex, crebram mutationem Romanorum principum cernens, Gallias suo jure nisus est occupare.	Now Aiwa-reik, king of the Visigoths, perceived the frequent change of Roman Emperors and strove to take control of Gaul by his own right.
Quod comperiens, Anthemius Imperator Brittonum solacia postulavit.	The Emperor {of the West} Anthemius {467-472} heard of it and asked the Bretons for aid.
Quorum rex Riotimus cum duodecim milibus, veniens in Biturigas civitatem Oceano, e navibus egressus susceptus est.	Their King Riotimus {(or Riothamus, from Celtic *Rigo-tamos "King-most"; the origin of "King Arthur")}, coming with twelve thousand men to the city of Bourges from Ocean, was taken in as soon as he got off of his ships {469 C.E.}.
238	
Ad quos rex Wisigotharum Eurichus innumerum ductans advenit exercitum diuque pugnans, Riotimum, Brittonum regem, antequam Romani in ejus societate conjungerentur, effugavit.	Aiwa-reik, king of the Visigoths, arrived leading an innumerable army against them, and after a long fight he routed Riotimus, king of the Bretons, before the Romans could join him.
Qui, ampla parte exercitus amissa, cum	So when he had lost a great part of his army,

quibus potuit fugiens, ad Burgundionum gentem vicinam Romanisque in eo tempore foederatam advenit.	he fled with all the men he could gather together, and came to the Burgundians {to the place then and now called Avallon, according to Arthurian legend}, a neighboring tribe then allied to the Romans.
Eurichus vero, rex Wisigotharum, Arvernam, Galliae civitatem, occupavit, Anthemio principe jam defuncto:	But Aiwa-reik, king of the Visigoths, seized the Gallic district of Auvergne; for the Emperor Anthemius was now dead {472}.
239	
Qui, quum cum Ricimere genero suo intestino bello saeviens Romam trivisset, ipse a genero peremptus regnum reliquit Olybrio.	Engaged in fierce war with his son-in-law Riqi-mer, he had worn out Rome and was himself finally slain by his son-in-law and yielded the rule to Olybrius {emperor of the West, 472}.
Quo tempore in Constantinopoli, Aspar, primus Patriciorum et Gothorum genere clarus, cum Ardabure et Patriciolo filiis, illo quidem olim Patricio, hoc autem Caesare generoque Leonis principis appellato, spadonum ensibus in palatio vulneratus interiit.	At that time Aspar, first of the Patricians and a famous man of the Gothic race {(but with an Alan father and Gothic mother)} was wounded by the swords of the eunuchs in his palace at Constantinople and died {473}. With him were slain his sons Arða-baúrjis {"Earth-son," "Child of the land"} and Patriciolus, the one long a Patrician, and the other styled a Caesar and son-in-law of the Emperor {of the East} Leo {I, 457-474}.
Et Olybrio necdum octavo mense in regnum ingresso obeunte, Glycerius apud Ravennam plus praesumptione quam electione Caesar effectus est.	Now Olybrius died not quite eight months after he had entered upon his reign, and Glycerius {emperor of the West, 473} was made Caesar at Ravenna, rather by usurpation than by election.
Quem anno vix expleto Nepos, Marcellini quondam Patricii sororis filius, a regno dejiciens, in Portu Romano episcopum ordinavit.	Hardly had a year been ended when Nepos {emperor of the West, 473-475}, the son of the sister of the former Patrician Marcellinus, deposed him from his office and ordained him bishop at the Port of Rome.
240	
Tantas varietates mutationesque Eurichus cernens, ut diximus superius, Arvernam	When Aiwa-reik, as we have already said, beheld these great and various changes, he

occupat civitatem, ubi tunc Romanorum dux praeerat Ecdicius, nobilissimus senator et Aviti dudum Imperatoris (qui ad paucos dies regnum invaserat) filius; nam hic, ante Olybrium paucis diebus tenens imperium, ultro secessit Placentiam, ibique episcopus est ordinatus.	seized the district of Auvergne, where the Roman general Ecdicius was at that time in command. He was a senator of most renowned family and the son of Avitus, a recent emperor {of the West, 455-456} who had usurped the reign for a few days - for Avitus held the rule for a few days before Olybrius, and then withdrew of his own accord to Placentia, where he was ordained bishop.
Hujus ergo filius Ecdicius, diu certans cum Wisigothis nec valens antistare, relictâ patria maximeque urbe Arvernate hosti, ad tutiora se loca collegit.	His son Ecdicius fought for a long time with the Visigoths, but did not have the power to prevail. So he left the country and (what was more important) the city of Auvergne to the enemy and betook himself to safer regions.
241	
Quod audiens Nepos Imperator praecepit Ecdicium relictis Galliis ad se venire, loco ejus Oreste magistro Militum ordinato.	When the Emperor Nepos heard of this, he ordered Ecdicius to leave Gaul and come to him, appointing Orestes in his stead as Master of the Soldiery.
Qui Orestes, suscepto exercitu et contra hostes egrediens, a Roma Ravennam pervenit, ibique remoratus Augustulum filium suum imperatorem effecit.	This Orestes thereupon received the army, set out from Rome against the enemy and came to Ravenna {in 475}. Here he tarried while he made his son Romulus Augustulus emperor {of the West; 475-476; last western emperor}.
Quo comperto, Nepos fugit Dalmatias ibique defecit, privatus a regno, ubi jam Glycerius dudum Imperator episcopatum Salonitanum habebat.	When Nepos learned of this, he fled to Dalmatia and died there, deprived of his throne, in the very place where Glycerius, the former emperor, held at that time the bishopric of Salona.
<p style="text-align: center;">XLVI</p> <p style="text-align: center;">242</p>	
Augustulo vero a patre Oreste in Ravenna Imperatore ordinato, non multo post Odoacer, Torcilingorum rex, habens secum Sciros, Herulos diversarumque gentium auxilios, Italiam occupavit et, Oreste interfecto, Augustulum filium ejus de regno pulsum in Lucullano Campaniae	Now when Augustulus had been appointed Emperor by his father Orestes in Ravenna {476}, it was not long before Auða-wakr {"Blest-awake," "Fortunate (in) alertness," "Auspiciously conscious"}, king of the Þorcilings {= Þwaírhei-l-ingos? (= ~ingos

Castello exilii poena damnavit.	"Progeny") "the Sons of Wrath, Race of Ire"?}, invaded Italy as leader of the Skeiros {"Pure(-blooded) ones"}, the Aírulos {"Earls," "Men"} and allies of various races. He put Orestes to death, drove his son Augustulus from the throne and condemned him to the punishment of exile in the Castle of Lucullus in Campania.
243	
Sic quoque Hesperium Romanae gentis imperium, quod, septingentesimo nono urbis conditae anno, primus Augustorum Octavianus Augustus tenere coepit, cum hoc Augustulo periit, anno decessorum prodecessorumve regni quingentesimo vicesimo secundo, Gothorum dehinc regibus Romam Italiamque tenentibus.	Thus the Western Empire of the Roman race, which Octavianus Augustus {reigned 27 B.C.-A.D. 14}, the first of the Augusti, began to govern in the seven hundred and ninth year from the founding of the city {i.e., in 45 B.C. the year before the assassination of Julius Caesar}, perished with this Augustulus {476} in the five hundred and twenty-second year from the beginning of the rule of his predecessors and those before them {i.e., from 45 B.C.}, and from this time onward kings of the Goths held Rome and Italy.
Interea Odoacer, rex gentium, omnem Italiam subjugatam (ut terrorem suum Romanis injiceret, mox initio regni sui Bracilam comitem apud Ravennam occidit) - regnoque suo confortato - paene per tredecim annos usque ad Theodorici praesentiam, de quo in subsequentibus dicturi sumus, obtinuit.	Meanwhile Auḏa-wakr, king of nations, subdued all Italy and then at the very outset of his reign slew Count Bracila at Ravenna {477} that he might inspire a fear of himself among the Romans. He consolidated his power and held it for almost thirteen years, even until the appearance of Piuḏa-reik, of whom we shall speak hereafter.
XLVII 244	
Interim tamen ad eum ordinem, unde digressi sumus, redeamus, et quomodo Euricus, rex Wisigotharum, Romani regni vacillationem cernens, Arelatum et Massiliam propriae subdidit dicioni.	But first let us return to that order from which we have digressed and tell how Aiwa-reik, king of the Visigoths, beheld the tottering of the Roman Empire and reduced Arles and Marseille to his own sway.
Gaisaricus etenim, Wandalorum rex, suis eum muneribus ad ista committenda illicuit, quatenus ipse Leonis vel Zenonis	Gaisa-reik {"Spear Ruler, Javelin Ruler"}, king of the Vandals, enticed him by gifts to do these things, to the end that he

insidias, quas contra eum direxerant, praecaveret, egitque, ut Orientale imperium Ostrogothae, Hesperium Wisigothae vastarent, ut in utraque re publica hostibus decertantibus ipse in Africa quietus regnaret.	himself might forestall the plots which {the emperors of the East} Leo {I, 457-474} and Zeno {474-491} had contrived against him. Therefore he stirred the Ostrogoths to lay waste the Eastern Empire and the Visigoths the Western, so that while his foes were battling in both empires, he might himself reign peacefully in Africa.
Quod Eurichus, grato suscipiens animo, totas Hispanias Galliasque sibi jam jure proprio tenens, simul quoque et Burgundiones subegit, in Arelatoque degens decimo nono regni sui anno vita privatus est.	Aiwa-reik perceived this with gladness and, as he already held all of Spain and Gaul by his own right, proceeded to subdue the Burgundians also. In the nineteenth year of his reign he was deprived of his life at Arles, where he then dwelt {484}.
245	
Huic successit proprius filius Alaricus, qui nonus in numero ab illo Alarico Magno regnum adeptus est Wisigotharum.	He was succeeded by his own son Ala-reik, the ninth in succession from the famous Ala-reik the Great to receive the kingdom of the Visigoths.
Nam pari tenore ut de Augustis superius diximus, et in Alaricis evenisse cognoscitur: et in eis saepe regna deficiunt, a quorum nominibus incoharunt.	For just as we said above about the Augusti, you can see that it happened likewise under the Ala-reiks: often a kingdom comes to its end under a ruler having the same name as its founder.
Quo nos interim praetermisso, sic, ut promisimus, omnem Gothorum texamus originem.	Meanwhile let us leave this subject, and weave together the whole story of the origin of the Goths, as we promised.
<p style="text-align: center;">XLVIII (The Divided Goths: Ostrogoths)</p>	
246	
Et quia, dum utraeque gentes, tam Ostrogothae quam etiam Wisigothae, in uno essent, ut valui, majorum sequens dicta, revolvi, divisosque Wisigothas ab Ostrogothis ad liquidum sum prosecutus, necesse nobis est iterum ad antiquas eorum Scythicas sedes redire et Ostrogotharum genealogiam actusque pari tenore exponere.	And since, following the stories of our forefathers, I have retold to the best of my ability when both peoples, both Ostrogoths and Visigoths, were one, and then clearly treated of the Visigoths apart from the Ostrogoths, I must now return to those ancient Scythian abodes and set forth in like manner the ancestry and deeds of the Ostrogoths.
Quos constat morte Ermanarici regis sui, decessione a Wisigothis divisos,	It is known that at the death of their king, Airmana-reik {"Mighty ruler"}, they were

Hunnorum subditos dicioni, in eadem patria remorasse, Winithahario tamen Amalo principatus sui insignia retinente.	made a separate people by the departure of the Visigoths, and remained in their country under the control of the Huns; yet Winīpa-harjis {"Fighter of Wends" (a Slavic people)} of the Amals retained the insignia of his rule.
247	
Qui, avi Wultwulfi virtutem imitatus, quamvis Ermanarico felicitate inferior, tamen aegre ferens Hunnorum imperio subjacere, paululum se subtrahens ab illis suamque dum nititur ostendere virtutem, in Antorum fines movit procinctum, eosque dum aggreditur prima congressione superatus; deinde fortiter egit regemque eorum, Boz nomine, cum filiis ejus et LXX {septuaginta} primatibus in exemplum terroris affixit, ut dediticiis metum cadavera pendentium geminarent.	He rivaled the valor of his grandfather Wulpwulf {"Magnificent-wolf"}, although he had not the good fortune of Airmana-reik. But disliking to remain under the rule of the Huns, he withdrew a little from them and strove to show his courage by moving his forces against the country of the Antes. When he attacked them, he was beaten in the first encounter. Thereafter he did valiantly and, as a terrible example, crucified their king, named Boz, together with his sons and seventy nobles, and left their bodies hanging there to double the fear of those who had surrendered.
248	
Sed dum tali libertate vix anni spatio imperasset, non est passus Balamber, rex Hunnorum, sed ascito ad se Gaisamundo, Hunimundi Magni filio, qui juramenti sui et fidei memor cum ampla parte Gothorum Hunnorum imperio subjacebat, renovatoque cum eo foedere, super Winithaharium duxit exercitum;	When he had ruled with such license for barely a year, Balamber, king of the Huns, would no longer endure it, but sent for Gaisa-mund {"Spear-protection," "Javelin-defense"}, son of Huni-mund {"Powerful-protection," "Strong guard-arm"} the Great. Now Gaisa-mund, together with a great part of the Goths, remained under the rule of the Huns, being mindful of his oath of fidelity. Balamber renewed his alliance with him and led his army up against Winīpa-harjis.
diuque certati, primo et secundo certamine Winithaharius vincit. Nec valet aliquis commemorare, quantam stragem de Hunnorum Winithaharius fecit exercitu.	After a long contest, Winīpa-harjis prevailed in the first and in the second conflict, nor can any say how great a slaughter he made of the army of the Huns.
249	
Tertio vero proelio surreptionis auxilio ad fluvium nomine Erac, dum utrique ad se	But in the third battle, while both were advancing on one another, Balamber,

<p>venissent, Balamber, sagitta missa caput Winithaharii saucians, eum interemit neptemque ejus Waldamarcam sibi in conjugio copulans jam omnem in pace Gothorum populum subactum possedit, ita tamen, ut genti Gothorum semper proprius regulus, quamvis Hunnorum consilio, imperaret.</p>	<p>through an ambush at the river Erac {also called Phasis: the modern Rioni south of the Caucasus in western Georgia}, shot an arrow wounding Winīpa-harjis in the head and killed him. Then Balamber took to himself in marriage Walda-marca {"Power-Wielder of the March (i.e., borderland)," "Queen of the Frontier"}, the grand-daughter of Winīpa-harjis, and finally ruled all the people of the Goths as his peaceful subjects, but in such a way that a ruler of their own number, even though by choice of the Huns, always held the power over the Gothic race.</p>
250	
<p>Et mox defuncto Winithahario rexit eos Hunimundus, filius quondam regis potentissimi Ermanarici, acer in bello totoque corpore pulchritudine pollens, qui posthaec contra Swavorum gentem feliciter dimicavit.</p>	<p>And later, after the death of Winīpa-harjis, Huni-mund ruled them, the son of Airmanarēik, a mighty king of yore; a man fierce in war and of famous personal beauty, who afterwards fought successfully against the race of the Swavi.</p>
<p>Eoque defuncto successit Thorismud filius ejus, flore juventutis ornatus, qui secundo principatus sui anno contra Gepidas movit exercitum, magnaue de illis potitus victoria, casu equi dicitur interemptus.</p>	<p>And when he died, his son Þáuris-moð succeeded him, in the very bloom of youth. In the second year of his rule he moved an army against the Gibiðos and won a great victory over them, but is said to have been killed by falling from his horse.</p>
251	
<p>Quo defuncto sic eum luxerunt Ostrogothae, ut quadraginta per annos in ejus locum rex alius non succederet, quatenus et illius memoriam semper haberent in ore et tempus accederet, quo Walamer habitum repararet virilem, qui erat ex consobrino ejus genitus Wandalahario; quia filius ejus, ut superius diximus, Beremud, jam contempta Ostrogotharum gente propter Hunnorum dominium, ad partes Hesperias Wisigotharum fuisset gentem secutus, de quo et ortus est Widiricus.</p>	<p>After Þáuris-moð's death, the Ostrogoths so mourned him that for forty years no other king succeeded him, a period during which both everyone talked about him all the time, and the time approached when Wala-mer {"Beloved famous one"} (who was born of Þáuris-moð's maternal cousin Wandala-harjis {"Fighter of Vandals"}) would restore the male role; for Þáuris-moð's own son, Bairi-moð {"Bear mood"}, having, as we said above, spurned the Ostrogothic people because of their submission to the Huns, had followed the Visigothic people to the Western lands; it</p>

	was of the latter that Wiðī-reik {"Forest ruler"} was descended.
Widirico quoque filius natus est Eutharicus, qui junctus Amalaswinthae, filiae Theoderici, item Amalorum stirpem jam divisam conjunxit et genuit Athalaricum et Matheswintham.	Wiðī-reik also had a son Iuþa-reik {"Ruler of the Eudusians" (a tribe inhabiting <i>Jut</i> -land)}, who married Amala-swinþo {"Amal strength"}, the daughter of Þiuðā-reik, thus uniting again the stock of the Amals which had divided long ago. Iuþa-reik begat Apala-reik {"Noble ruler"} and Maþa-swinþo {"Good strength"}.
Sed quia Athalaricus in annis puerilibus defunctus est, Matheswintha, Constantinopolim allata de secundo viro, id est Germano, fratruele Justiniani Imperatoris, genuit postumum filium, quem nominavit Germanum.	But since Apala-reik died in the years of his boyhood, Maþa-swinþo was taken to Constantinople by her second husband, namely Germanus, a cousin of the Emperor Justinian, and bore a posthumous son, whom she named Germanus.
252	
Sed nobis, ut ordo, quem coepimus, decurrat, ad Wandalarīi subolem, quae trino flore pullulabat, redeundum est.	But that the order we have taken for our history may run its due course, we must return to the stock of Wandala-harjis, which put forth three sprouts.
Hic enim Wandalarīus, fratrueis Ermanarici et supra scripti Thorismudi consobrinus, tribus editis liberis in gente Amala gloriatus est, id est Walamir, Thiudimir, Widimir.	This Wandala-harjis, the great-grandson of a brother of Airmana-reik and cousin of the aforesaid Þauris-moð, vaunted himself among the race of the Amals because he had begotten three sons, Wala-mer, Þiuðī-mer and Wiðī-mer.
Ex quibus per successionem parentum Walamir in regnum conscendit, adhuc Hunnis eos inter alias gentes generaliter obtinentibus.	Of these Wala-mer ascended the throne after his parents, though the Huns as yet held the power over the Goths in general as among other nations.
253	
Eratque tunc in tribus his germanis contemplatio grata, quando mirabilis Thiudimer pro fratris Walamir militabat imperio, Walamir vero pro altero jubebat ornando, Widimer servire fratribus aestimabat.	It was pleasant to behold the concord of these three brothers; for the admirable Þiuðī-mer served as a soldier for the empire of his brother Wala-mer, and Wala-mer bade honors be given him, while Wiðī-mer esteemed it an honor to serve them both.
Sic eis mutua affectione se tuentibus, nulli	Thus regarding one another with common

penitus deerat regnum, quod utrique in sua pace tenebant.	affection, not one was wholly deprived of the kingdom which two of them held in mutual peace.
Ita tamen, ut saepe dictum est, imperabant, ut ipsi Attilae Hunnorum regis imperio deservirent: quibus nec contra parentes Wisigothas licuisset recusare certamen, sed necessitas domini, etiam parricidium si jubet, implendum est.	Yet, as has often been said, they ruled in such a way that they submitted to the dominion of Attila, king of the Huns. Indeed they could not have refused to fight against their kinsmen the Visigoths, and they would even have had to commit parricide at their lord's command.
Nec aliter ab Hunnorum dominio divelli potuit gens aliqua Scythica, nisi optata cunctis nationibus in commune et Romanis mors Attilae eveniret, quae tam fuit vilis, ut vita mirabilis.	There was no way whereby any Scythian tribe could have been wrested from the power of the Huns, save by the death of Attila - an event the Romans and all other nations desired. Now his death was as base as his life was marvelous.
XLIX	
254	
Qui, ut Priscus historicus refert, exitus sui tempore, puellam Hildico nomine decoram valde sibi in matrimonio post innumerabiles uxores, ut mos erat gentis illius, socios, ejusque in nuptiis, hilaritate nimia resolutus, vino somnoque gravatus resupinus jacebat; redundans sanguis, qui ei solite de naribus effluebat, dum in consuetis meatibus impeditur, itinere ferali faucibus illapsus exstinxit.	As the historian Priscus relates, just before his death {453} Attila married an extremely beautiful girl called Hildika {"Fight," "Battle"} after numerous other wives, as was the custom of his people. At his wedding he had over-indulged in celebration and was lying on his back, heavy with wine and sleep. A stream of blood, which would normally have run out of his nose, was prevented from its normal course: it flowed on a fatal path into his throat and killed him.
Ita glorioso per bella regi temulentia pudendos exitus dedit.	So drunkenness brought a shameful end to a king famed in war.
Sequenti vero luce quum magna pars diei fuisset exempta, ministri regii, triste aliquid suspicantes, post clamores maximos, fores effringunt inveniuntque Attilae sine ullo vulnere necem sanguinis effusione peractam, puellamque demisso vultu sub velamine lacrimantem.	The next day, when a great part of the day had passed, the king's servants suspected something amiss and, after a great outcry, broke down the doors. They found Attila dead, with no wounds. He had died from an excessive nosebleed, and the girl, with head bowed, sobbed under her veil.
255	
Tunc, ut gentis illius mos est, crinium parte truncata informes facies cavis	Then, as is the custom of that race, they hacked off part of the hair of their heads and

turpavere vulneribus, ut proelior eximius non femineis lamentationibus et lacrimis, sed sanguine lugeretur virili.	disfigured their faces with deep wounds, that the renowned warrior might be mourned, not by effeminate wailings and tears, but by the blood of men.
De quo id accessit mirabile, ut Marciano Principi Orientis, de tam feroci hoste sollicito, in somnis divinitas assistens arcum Attilae in eadem nocte fractum ostenderet, quasi quod gens ipsa eo telo multum praesumat.	Moreover a wondrous thing took place in connection with Attila's death. For in a dream some god stood at the side of Marcian, Emperor of the East {450-457}, while he was worried about his fierce foe, and showed him the bow of Attila broken in that same night, as if to intimate that due to that weapon the race of the Huns was taking a lot for granted.
Hoc Priscus historicus vera se dicit attestatione probare.	This account the historian Priscus says he accepts upon truthful evidence.
Nam in tantum magnis imperiis Attila terribilis habitus est, ut ejus mortem in locum muneris superna regnantibus indicarent.	For Attila was considered so terrifying to great empires that it would only be as a special gift that the heavenly powers revealed his death to rulers.
256	
Cujus manes quibus modis a sua gente honorati sint, pauca de multis dicere non omittamus.	We shall not omit to say a few words about the many ways in which his shade was honored by his race.
In mediis si quidem campis et intra tentoria serica cadavere collocato, spectaculum admirandum et sollemniter exhibetur.	His body was placed in the midst of a plain and lay in state in a silken tent as a sight for men's admiration.
Nam de tota gente Hunnorum lectissimi equites in eo loco, quo erat positus, in modum circensium cursibus ambientes, facta ejus cantu funereo tali ordine referebant:	The best horsemen of the entire tribe of the Huns rode circling the place where he lay, as in circus games, and told of his deeds in a funeral dirge in the following manner:
257	
"Praecipuus Hunnorum rex Attila, patre genitus Mundzuko, fortissimarum gentium dominus, qui inaudita ante se potentia solus	"Attila the great, king of the Huns, fathered by Mundzuk, lord over peoples of great strength, who, with previously unheard-of power

<p>Scythica et Germanica regna possedit, nec non utraque Romani orbis imperia captis civitatibus terrui</p> <p>et,</p> <p>ne praedae reliqua subderentur, placatus precibus annuum vectigal accepit; cumque haec omnia proventu felicitatis egerit,</p> <p>non vulnere hostium, non fraude suorum, sed gente incolumi inter gaudia laetus sine sensu doloris occubuit.</p> <p>Quis ergo hunc exitum putet, quem nullus aestimat vindicans? "</p>	<p>alone</p> <p>dominated the Scythian and German realms, captured cities, and terrified both empires of the Roman world</p> <p>and,</p> <p>softened by their pleas that the rest might not be subject to plunder, he accepted annual tribute.</p> <p>And when he had accomplished all this by the favor of fortune, he fell, not by wound of the foe, nor by treachery of friends, but with his people unscathed, happy in his joy and without sense of pain.</p> <p>Who, then, can rate this as death, when none believes it calls for vengeance? "</p>
258	
<p>Postquam talibus lamentis est defletus, "<i>strawam</i> " super tumulum ejus, quam appellant, ipsi ingenti comissatione concelebrant;</p>	<p>When they had mourned him with such lamentations, they themselves celebrated what they call a "<i>strawa</i> " {a "strewing," i.e., probably of handfuls of earth} over his mound amidst wild revelry.</p>
<p>et contraria invicem sibi copulantes, luctu funereo mixta gaudia explicabant, noctuque secreto cadaver terra reconditum; coopercula, primum auro, secundum argento, tertium ferri rigore, communiunt, significantes tali argumento potentissimo regi omnia convenire: ferrum, quod gentes edomuit, aurum et argentum, quod ornatum rei publicae utriusque acceperit.</p>	<p>They gave way in turn to the extremes of feeling and displayed joy mixed with funereal grief. Then in the secrecy of night they buried his body in the earth. They bound his coffins, the first with gold, the second with silver and the third with the strength of iron, showing by such means that these three things suited the mightiest of kings; iron because he subdued the nations, gold and silver because he received the honors of both empires.</p>

Addunt arma hostium caedibus acquisita, phaleras variarum gemmarum fulgore pretiosas et diversi generis insignia, quibus colitur aulicum decus.	They also added the arms of foe men won in the fight, medallions of rare worth, sparkling with various gems, and ornaments of all sorts whereby princely splendor is maintained.
Et, ut tantis divitiis humana curiositas arceretur, operi deputatos detestabili mercede trucidarunt, emersitque momentanea mors sepelientibus cum sepulto.	And that so great riches might be kept from human curiosity, they slew those appointed to the work - a horrible pay for their labor; and thus sudden death came upon the buriers as well as the buried.
L <hr style="width: 10%; margin: auto;"/> 259	
Talibus peractis, ut solent animi juvenum ambitu potentiae concitari, inter successores Attilae de regno orta contentio est, et dum inconsulte imperare cupiunt cuncti, omnes simul imperium perdidērunt.	After they had fulfilled these rites, a contest for the highest place arose among Attila's successors - for the minds of young men are wont to be inflamed by ambition for power -, and in their rash eagerness to rule they all alike destroyed his empire.
Sic frequentius regna gravat copia quam inopia successorum.	Thus kingdoms are often weighed down by a superfluity rather than by a lack of successors.
Nam filii Attilae, quorum per licentiam libidinis paene populus fuit, gentes sibi dividi aequa sorte poscebant, ut ad instar familiae bellicosi reges cum populis mitterentur in sortem.	For the sons of Attila, who through the license of his lust formed almost a people of themselves, were clamoring that the nations should be divided among them equally and that warlike kings with their peoples should be apportioned to them by lot like household slaves.
260	
Quod ut Gepidarum rex comperit Ardarichus, indignatus de tot gentibus velut vilissimorum mancipiorum condicione tractari, contra filios Attilae primus insurgit, illatumque serviendi pudorem secuta felicitate deterisit, nec solum suam gentem, sed et ceteras quae pariter premebantur sua discessione absolvit, quia facile omnes appetunt, quod pro cunctorum utilitate temptatur.	When Arđa-reik, king of the Gibiđos, learned this, he became enraged because so many nations were being treated like slaves of the basest condition, and was the first to rise against the sons of Attila. Good fortune attended him, and he effaced the disgrace of servitude that rested upon him. For by his revolt he freed not only his own tribe, but all the others who were equally oppressed; since all readily strive for that which is sought for the general advantage.
In mutuum igitur armantur exitium, bellumque committitur in Pannonia juxta	Both sides armed themselves for mutual annihilation, and battle was joined {454} in

flumen, cui nomen est Nedao.	Pannonia, near a river called Nedao {(or Netad), a tributary of the Sava in modern Hungary west of the Danube}.
261	
Illic concursus factus est gentium variarum, quas Attila in sua tenuerat ditione.	There an encounter took place between the various nations Attila had held under his sway.
Dividuntur regna cum populis, fiuntque ex uno corpore membra diversa, nec quae unius passioni compaterentur, sed quae exciso capite in invicem insanirent; quae nunquam contra se pares invenerant, nisi ipsi mutuis se vulneribus sauciantes, se ipsos discernerent fortissimae nationes.	Kingdoms with their peoples were divided, and out of one body were made divergent members not suffering together in the suffering of a unified entity, but, with the head gone, striving madly against each other. They had never found their equals ranged against them without tearing one another apart with wounds mutually given. And so the bravest nations tore themselves to pieces.
Nam ibi admirandum reor fuisse spectaculum, ubi cernere erat contis pugnantes Gothum, ense furem Gepidam, in vulnere suo Rugum tela frangentem, Swavum pede, Hunnum sagitta praesumere, Alanum gravi, Erulum levi armatura aciem struere.	For then, I think, must have occurred a most remarkable spectacle, where one might see the Goths fighting with pikes, the Gibiðos raging with the sword, the Rugians {= inhabitants of <i>Roga-land</i> } breaking off the spears in their own wounds, the Swevians {"(our) Own (people)"} showing their ferocity by fighting on foot, the Huns showing theirs with bows, the Alans drawing up a battle line of heavy-armed, the Airulos of light-armed, warriors.
262	
Post multos ergo gravesque conflictus favit Gepidis inopinata victoria. Nam XXX {triginta} fere milia {= 30,000} tam Hunnorum quam aliarum gentium, quae Hunnis ferebant auxilium, Ardarici gladius conspiratioque peremit.	Finally, after many bitter conflicts, victory fell unexpectedly to the Gibiðos. For the sword and conspiracy of Arða-reik destroyed almost thirty thousand men, Huns as well as those of the other nations who brought them aid.
In quo proelio filius Attilae major natu nomine Ellac occiditur, quem tantum parens super ceteros amasse perhibebatur, ut eum cunctis diversisque liberis suis in regno praeferret; sed non fuit votis patris	In this battle fell Ellac, the elder son of Attila, whom his father is said to have loved so much more than all the rest that he preferred him to all and sundry children of his kingdom. But fortune was not in accord

fortuna consentiens.	with his father's wish.
Nam post multas hostium caedes sic viriliter eum constat peremptum, ut tam gloriosum superstes pater optasset interitum.	For after slaying many of the foe, it appears that he met his death so bravely that, had his father lived, he would have wished for such a glorious end.
263	
Reliqui vero germani ejus, eo occiso, fugantur juxta litus Pontici maris, ubi prius Gothos sedisse descripsimus.	When Ellac was slain, his remaining brothers were put to flight near the shore of the Sea of Pontus, where we have said the Goths first settled.
Cesserunt itaque Hunni, quibus cedere putabatur universitas.	Thus did the Huns give way, a race to which men thought the whole world must yield.
Adeo discidium perniciores res est, ut divisi corruerent, qui adunatis viribus terribantur.	So baneful a thing is division, that they who used to inspire terror when their strength was united, were overthrown separately.
Haec causa Ardarici regis Gepidarum felix affuit diversis nationibus, quae Hunnorum regimini invitae famulabantur, eorumque diu maestissimos animos ad hilaritatem libertatis votivam erexit; - venientesque multi per legatos suos ad solum Romanum et a principe tunc Marciano gratissime suscepti, distributas sedes, quas incolerent, acceperunt.	The cause of Arđa-reik, king of the Gibiđos, was fortunate for the various nations who were unwillingly subject to the rule of the Huns, for it raised their long downcast spirits to the glad hope of freedom. Many sent ambassadors to the Roman territory, where they were most graciously received by Marcian, who was then emperor {of the East, 450-457}, and took the abodes allotted them to dwell in.
264	
Nam Gepidae, Hunnorum sibi sedes viribus vindicantes, totius Daciae finibus velut victores potiti, nihil aliud a Romano imperio, nisi pacem et annua sollemnia, ut strenui viri, amica pactione postulaverunt.	But the Gibiđos by their own might won for themselves the territory of the Huns and ruled as victors over the extent of all Dacia, demanding of the Roman Empire nothing more than peace and an annual gift as a pledge of their friendly alliance.
Quod et libens tunc annuit Imperator et usque nunc consuetum donum gens ipsa a Romano suscipit Principe.	This the Emperor freely granted at the time, and to this day that race receives its customary gifts from the Roman Emperor.
Gothi vero, cernentes Gepidas Hunnorum sedes sibi defendere Hunnorumque populum suas antiquas sedes occupare, maluerunt a Romano regno terras petere quam cum discrimine suo invadere	Now when the Goths saw the Gibiđos defending for themselves the territory of the Huns and the people of the Huns occupying the Goths' own ancient abodes, they preferred to ask for lands from the Roman

alienas, accipientesque Pannoniam; quae in longam porrecta planitiem habet ab oriente Moesiam Superiorem, a meridie Dalmatiam, ab occasu Noricum, a septentrione Danubium.	Empire, rather than invade the lands of others with danger to themselves. So they received Pannonia, which stretches in a long plain, being bounded on the east by Upper Moesia, on the south by Dalmatia, on the west by Noricum and on the north by the Danube.
Ornata patria civitatibus plurimis, quarum prima Sirmium, extrema Vindobona.	This land is adorned with many cities, the first of which {from Constantinople} is Sirmium {modern Sremska Mitrovica, Yugoslavia, northwest of Belgrade} and the last, Vienna.
265	
Sauromatae vero, quos Sarmatas dicimus, et Cemandri et quidam ex Hunnis partem Illyrici ad Castramartenam urbem sedes sibi datas coluerunt.	But the Sauromatae, whom we call Sarmatians, and the Cemandri and certain of the Huns dwelt in Castra Martis, a city given them in the region of Illyricum.
Ex quo genere fuit Bliwila dux Pentapolitanus ejusque germanus Froila et nostri temporis Bessa patricius.	Of this race was Bliwila, Duke of Pentapolis {in Cyrene in North Africa}, and his brother Froila and also Bessa, a Patrician of our day.
Sciri vero et Sadagarii et certi Alanorum cum duce suo, nomine Candac, Scythiam Minorem Inferioremque Moesiam acceperunt.	The Skeiros, moreover, and the Sadagarii and certain of the Alani with their leader, Candac by name, received Scythia Minor and Lower Moesia.
266	
Cujus Candacis Alanorum ducis, Wihamuthis patris mei genitor, Pharia (id est meus avus), notarius, quousque Candac ipse viveret, fuit;	Of this Candac leader of the Alans, Farja {"Farer," "Traveler," "Courier"}, the father of my father Weiha-moð {"Sacred mood," "Holy disposition"} (that is to say, my grandfather), was secretary as long as Candac lived.
ejusque germanae filio, Gunthigis, qui et Baza dicebatur, magistro Militum, filio Andagis filii Andilae de prosapia Amalorum descenditis, ego item quamvis agrammatus Jordanes ante conversionem meam notarius fui.	To his sister's son Gunpi-gis {"Combat-spear," "Battle-javelin"}, also called Batja {"The Good," "Useful"}, the Master of the Soldiery (who was the son of Anda-gis {"Spearpoint"} son of Andila {"End," "Endpoint"} of the dynasty of the Amals), before my conversion I, Jordanes, although uneducated, was likewise

	secretary.
Rugi vero aliaeque nationes nonnullae Bizyim et Arcadiopolim ut incolerent, petiverunt.	The Rugians, however, and some other races asked that they might inhabit Bizye {in Thrace, not far from Constantinople} and Arcadiopolis {near Bizye}.
Hernac quoque junior Attilae filius cum suis, in extremis Minoris Scythiae sedes delegit.	Hernac, the younger son of Attila, with his followers, chose a home in the most distant part of Lesser Scythia.
Emnetzur et Ultzindur, consanguinei ejus, in Dacia ripense Uto et Oesco Almoque potiti sunt, multique Hunnorum passim proruentes tunc se in Romaniam dediderunt, e quibus nunc usque Sacromontisi et Fossatisii dicuntur.	Emnetzur and Ultzindur, kinsmen of his, won Utus and Oescus and Almus in Dacia on the bank of the Danube, and many of the Huns, then swarming everywhere, betook themselves into the Roman Empire, and from them the Sacromontisi and the Fossatisii of this day are said to be descended.
LI <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> 267	
Erant si quidem et alii Gothi, qui dicuntur minores, populus immensus, cum suo pontifice ipsoque primate Wulfila, qui eis dicitur et litteras instituisse.	There were other Goths also, called the Lesser, a great people whose priest and primate was Wulfila, who is said to have invented an alphabet for them.
Hodieque sunt in Moesia, regionem incolentes Nicopolitanam ad pedes Haemi montis, gens multa, sed pauper et imbellis nihiloque abundans nisi armentis diversi generis, pecorum et pascuis silvaeque lignorum; parum tritici ceterarumque specierum terra fecunda.	And today they are in Moesia, inhabiting the Nicopolitan region {Nicopolis = modern Trnovo, Bulgaria} as far as the base of Mount Haemus. They are a numerous people, but poor and unwarlike, rich in nothing save flocks of various kinds and pastures for cattle and forests for wood. Their country is not fruitful in wheat and other sorts of grain.
Vineas vero nec, si sunt alibi, certi eorum cognoscunt, ex vicinis locis sibi vinum negotiantes; nam lacte aluntur plerique.	Some of them do not know that vineyards exist elsewhere, and they buy their wine from neighboring countries. But most of them drink milk.
LII <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> 268	
Ergo, ut ad gentem, unde agimus, revertamur, id est Ostrogotharum, qui in	Let us now return to the tribe with which we started, namely the Ostrogoths, who were

Pannonia sub rege Walamer ejusque germanis Thiudimer et Widimer morabantur; quamvis divisa loca, consilia tamen unita (nam Walamer inter Scarniungam et Aquam Nigram fluvios, Thiudimer juxta lacum Pelsois, Widimer inter utrosque manebat);	dwelling in Pannonia under their king Wala-mer and his brothers Þiuði-mer and Wiði-mer. Although their territories were separate, yet their plans were one. For Wala-mer dwelt between the rivers Scarniunga {modern Jarcina, Yugoslavia} and Aqua Nigra {modern Karasica}, Þiuði-mer near Lake Pelso {Lake Balaton in western Hungary} and Wiði-mer between them both.
contigit ergo, ut Attilae filii contra Gothos quasi desertores dominationis suae, velut fugacia mancipia requirentes, venirent ignarisque aliis fratribus super Walamer solum irruerent.	Now it happened that the sons of Attila, regarding the Goths as deserters from their rule, came against them as though seeking fugitive slaves and attacked Wala-mer alone, when his brothers knew nothing of it {456}.
269	
Quos tamen ille quamvis cum paucis excepit diuque fatigatos ita prostravit, ut vix pars aliqua hostium remaneret - quae, in fugam versa, eas partes Scythiae peteret, quas Danapri amnis fluenta praetermeant, quem lingua sua Hunni War appellant.	He sustained their attack, though he had but few supporters, and after harassing them a long time, so utterly overwhelmed them that scarcely any portion of the enemy remained. The remnant turned in flight and sought the parts of Scythia which border on the stream of the river Dniepr, which the Huns call in their own tongue the War.
Eo namque tempore ad fratrem Thiudimerem gaudii nuntium direxit, sed eo mox die nuntius veniens, felicius in domo Thiudimer repperit gaudium.	Thereupon he sent a messenger of good tidings to his brother Þiuði-mer, and on the very day the messenger arrived he found even greater joy in the house of Þiuði-mer.
Ipsa siquidem die Theodoricus ejus filius, quamvis de Erelieva concubina, bonae tamen spei puerulus natus erat.	For on that day his son Þiuða-reik was born {here allegedly in 456, but actually in 451 after the battle of the Catalaunian Fields}, of a concubine Airi-liubo {"Early-beloved," "First loved"} indeed, and yet a child of good hope.
270	
Post tempus ergo non multum, rex Walamir ejusque germani Thiudemir et Widimir, consueta dum tardarent dona a Principe Marciano, quae ad instar strenae acciperent et pacis foedera custodirent,	Now after no great time King Wala-mer and his brothers Þiuði-mer and Wiði-mer sent an embassy to the Emperor Marcian, because the usual gifts which they received like a New Year's present from the Emperor, to

missa legatione ad Imperatorem, vident Theodericum Triarii filium, et hunc genere Gothico, alia tamen stirpe, non Amala procreatum, omnino florentem cum suis, Romanorumque amicitii junctum et annua sollemnia consequentem, et se tantum despici.	preserve the compact of peace, were slow in arriving. And they found that Þiuḁa-reik, son of Triarius, a man of Gothic blood also, but born of another stock, not of the Amals, was in great favor, together with his followers. He was allied in friendship with the Romans and obtained the customary annual stipend, while they themselves were merely held in disdain.
271	
Illico furore commoti arma arripiunt, et Illyricum paene totum, discurrentes in praedam, devastant.	Thereat they were aroused to frenzy and took up arms. Roving all around in their search for spoil, they laid waste almost the whole of Illyricum.
Sed statim Imperator, animo mutato, ad pristinam recurrit amicitiam; missaque legatione, tam praeterita cum instantibus munera tribuit quam etiam de futuro sine aliqua controversia tribuere compromittit; pacisque obsidem ab eis, de quo supra rettulimus, Theodoricum, infantulum Thiudimeris, accipit qui, jam septem annorum incrementa conscendens, octavum intraverat annum.	Then the Emperor quickly changed his mind and returned to his former state of friendship. He sent an embassy to give them not just the past gifts along with those due now, but also promised to give them in future without any dispute. From the Goths the Romans received as a hostage of peace Þiuḁa-reik, the young, above-mentioned child of Þiuḁi-mer {459}. He had now attained the age of seven years and was entering upon his eighth.
Quem dum pater cunctaretur dare, patruus Walamir exstitit supplicator tantum, ut pax firma inter Romanos Gothosque maneret.	While his father hesitated about giving him up, his uncle Wala-mer besought him to do it, hoping that peace between the Romans and the Goths might thus be assured.
Datus igitur Theodoricus obses a Gothis, duciturque ad urbem Constantinopolitanam Leoni Principi, et, quia puerulus elegans erat, meruit gratiam imperialem habere.	Therefore Þiuḁa-reik was given as a hostage by the Goths and brought to the city of Constantinople {459} to the Emperor Leo {(I, of the East; 457-474)} and, being a goodly child, deservedly gained the imperial favor.
<div style="text-align: center;"> LIII <hr style="width: 20%; margin: 0 auto;"/> 272 </div>	
Postquam ergo firma pax Gothorum cum Romanis effecta est, videntes Gothi non sibi sufficere ea quae ab Imperatore acceperant, simulque solitam cupientes	Now after firm peace was established between Goths and Romans, the Goths found that the possessions they had received from the Emperor were insufficient for them.

ostentare virtutem, coeperunt vicinas gentes circumcirca praedari, primum contra Sadagares, qui interiorem Pannoniam possidebant, arma moventes.	Furthermore, they were eager to display their wonted valor, and so began to plunder the neighboring races round about them, first attacking the Sadagares {467/468} who held the interior of Pannonia.
Quod ubi rex Hunnorum Dintzic filius Attilae cognovisset, collectis secum qui adhuc videbantur quamvis pauci ejus tamen sub imperio remansisse Ultzinzuribus, Angisciris, Bittuguribus, Bardoribus, veniensque ad Bassianam Pannoniae civitatem eamque circumvallans, fines ejus coepit praedari.	When Dengizich, king of the Huns, a son of Attila, learned this, he gathered to him the few who still seemed to have remained under his sway, namely, the Ultzinzures, and Angisciri, the Bittugures and the Bardores. Coming to Bassiana {in today's northwestern Hungary}, a city of Pannonia, he beleaguered it and began to plunder its territory.
273	
Quo comperto Gothi ibi, ubi erant, expeditionemque solventes, quam contra Sadagares collegerant, in Hunnos convertunt et sic eos suis a finibus ingloriosos pepulerunt, ut jam ex illo tempore qui remanserunt Hunni et usque hactenus Gothorum arma formident.	Then the Goths at once abandoned the expedition they had planned against the Sadagares, turned upon the Huns and drove them so ingloriously from their own land that those who remained have been in dread of the arms of the Goths from that time even down to the present day.
Quiescente vero tandem Hunnorum gente a Gothis, Hunimundus, Swavorum dux, dum ad depraedandas Dalmatias transit, armenta Gothorum in campis errantia depraedatur, quia Dalmatia Swaviae vicina erat nec a Pannoniis finibus multum distabat, praesertim ubi tunc Gothi residebant.	When the tribe of the Huns had finally been subdued by the Goths, Huni-mund, chief of the Swevi, who was crossing over to plunder Dalmatia, carried off some cattle of the Goths which were straying over the plains; for Dalmatia was near Swevia and not far distant from the territory of Pannonia, especially that part where the Goths were then staying.
274	
Quid plurimum? Hunimundo cum Swavis, vastatis Dalmatiis, ad sua revertente, Thiudimer, germanus Walameris regis Gothorum, non tantum jacturam armentorum dolens quantum metuens ne Swavi, si impune hoc lucrarentur, ad majorem licentiam prosilirent, sic vigilavit in eorum transitu, ut intempesta nocte dormientes invaderet ad lacum Pelsodis, consertoque inopinato	So then, as Huni-mund was returning with the Swevians to his own country, after he had devastated Dalmatia, Þiuði-mer the brother of Wala-mer, king of the Goths, kept watch on their line of march. Not that he grieved so much over the loss of his cattle, but he feared that if the Swevians obtained this plunder with impunity, they would proceed to greater license. So in the dead of night, while they were asleep, he made an

proelio ita eos oppressit ut, etiam ipso rege Hunimundo capto, omnem exercitum ejus, qui gladio evasissent, Gothorum subderet servituti.	unexpected attack upon them, near Lake Pelso. Here he so completely crushed them that he took captive and sent into slavery under the Goths even Huni-mund, their king, and all of his army who had escaped the sword.
Et dum multum esset amator misericordiae, facta ultione veniam condonavit reconciliatusque cum Swavis, eundem, quem ceperat, adoptans sibi filium, remisit cum suis in Swaviam.	Yet as he was a great lover of mercy, he granted pardon after taking vengeance and became reconciled to the Svevians. He adopted as his son the same man whom he had taken captive, and sent him back with his followers into Swevia.
275	
Sed ille immemor paternae gratiae, post aliquod tempus conceptum dolum parturiens Scirorumque gentem incitans, qui tunc super Danubium considebant et cum Gothis pacifice morabantur, quatenus scissi ab eorum foedere secumque juncti in arma prosilirent gentemque Gothorum invaderent.	But Huni-mund was unmindful of his adopted father's kindness. After sometime he brought forth a plot he had contrived and aroused the tribe of the Skeiros, who then dwelt above the Danube and abode peaceably with the Goths, to the point that the Skeiros broke off their alliance with them, took up arms, joined themselves to Huni-mund and went out to attack the race of the Goths.
Tunc Gothis nihil mali sperantibus, praesertim de utrisque amicis vicinis confisis, bellum exsurgit ex improviso; coactique necessitate ad arma confugiunt solitoque certamine arrepto se suamque injuriam ulciscuntur.	Thus war came upon the Goths who were expecting no evil, because they relied upon both of their neighbors as friends. Constrained by necessity they took up arms and avenged themselves and their injuries by recourse to accustomed battle.
276	
In eo siquidem proelio rex eorum Walamir, dum equo insidens ad cohortandos suos ante aciem curreret, proturbatus equus corruit sessoremque suum dejecit, qui mox inimicorum lanceis confossus interemptus est.	In this battle {468/9}, as King Wala-mer rode on his horse before the line to encourage his men, the horse was wounded and fell, overthrowing its rider. Wala-mer was quickly pierced by his enemies' spears and slain.
Gothi vero, poenas tam regis sui mortis quam suae injuriae a rebellibus exigentes, ita sunt proeliati, ut paene de gente Scirorum nisi qui nomen ipsum ferrent, et hi cum dedecore, non remansissent: sic omnes exstincti sunt.	Thereupon the Goths proceeded to exact vengeance for the death of their king, as well as for the injury done them by the rebels. They fought in such wise that there remained of all the race of the Skeiros only a few who bore the name, and they with disgrace. Thus

	were all destroyed.
LIV <hr style="width: 10%; margin: auto;"/> 277	
<p>Quorum exitium Swavorum reges Hunimundus et Alaricus veriti, in Gothos arma moverunt, freti auxilio Sarmatarum qui, cum Beuca et Babai regibus suis, auxiliarii ei advenissent, ipsasque Scirorum reliquias quasi ad ultionem suam acrius pugnatos arcessentes cum Edica et Hunwulfo eorum primatibus; habuerunt simul secum tam Gepidas quam ex gente Rugorum non parva solacia, ceterisque hinc inde collectis ingentem multitudinem aggregantes ad amnem Boliam in Pannoniis castra metati sunt.</p>	<p>The kings of the Svevians, Huni-mund and Ala-reik, fearing the destruction that had come upon the Skeiros, next made war upon the Goths, relying upon the aid of the Sarmatians, who had come to them as auxiliaries with their kings Beuca and Babai. They summoned the last remnants of the Skeiros, with Aipika {"Oath-bound," "Oath-sworn"} and Huni-wulf {"Strong-wolf"}, their chieftains, thinking they would fight the more bitterly to avenge themselves. They had on their side the Gibiðos also, as well as no small reinforcements from the race of the Rugians and from others gathered here and there. Thus they brought together a great host at the river Bolia {(i.e., across from the confluence of the Ipel with the Danube)} in Pannonia and encamped there {469}.</p>
278	
<p>Gothi tunc, Walamero defuncto, ad fratrem ejus Thiudimer confugerunt.</p>	<p>Now when Wala-mer was dead, the Goths fled to Piuði-mer, his brother.</p>
<p>Qui quamvis dudum cum fratribus regnans, tamen auctioris potestatis insignia sumens, Widimer, fratre juniore accito, et cum ipso curas belli partitus, coactus ad arma prosilivit; consertoque proelio, superior pars invenitur Gothorum, adeo ut campus inimicorum corruentium cruore madefactus, ut rubrum pelagus appareret, armaque et cadavera in modum collium cumulata campum plus decem milibus oppleverunt.</p>	<p>Although he had long ruled along with his brothers, yet he took the insignia of his increased authority and summoned his younger brother Wiði-mer and shared with him the cares of war, resorting to arms under compulsion. A battle was fought and the party of the Goths was found to be so much the stronger that the plain was drenched in the blood of their fallen foes and looked like a crimson sea. Weapons and corpses, piled up like hills, covered the plain for more than ten miles.</p>
279	
<p>Quod Gothi cernentes, ineffabili exultatione laetantur, eo quod et regis sui</p>	<p>When the Goths saw this, they rejoiced with joy unspeakable, because by this great</p>

Walameris sanguinem et suam injuriam cum maxima inimicorum strage ulciscerentur.	slaughter of their foes they had avenged both the blood of Wala-mer their king and the injury done themselves.
De vero innumeranda variaque multitudo hostium, qui valuerunt evadere, perquam effugati, vix ad sua inglorii pervenerunt.	But those of the innumerable and motley throng of the foe who were able to escape, everywhere put to flight, made it home only with difficulty and without glory.
LV 280	
Post certum vero tempus, instanti hiemali frigore amneque Danubii solite congelato - nam istiusmodi fluvius ita congelascit, ut in silicis modum pedestrem vehat exercitum plaustraque et tragulas vel quicquid vehiculi fuerit, nec cumbarum indigeat lintribus - sic ergo eum gelatum Thiodimer Gothorum rex cernens, pedestrem ducit exercitum emensoque Danubio Swavis improvisus a tergo apparuit.	After a certain time, when the wintry cold was at hand, the river Danube was frozen over as usual. For a river like this freezes so hard that it will support like a solid rock an army of foot-soldiers and wagons and sledges and whatever vehicles there may be, - nor is there need of skiffs or boats. So when Þiuði-mer, king of the Goths, saw that it was frozen, he led his army across the Danube {winter 469/470} and appeared unexpectedly to the Swevians from the rear.
Nam regio illa Swavorum ab oriente Baiwaros habet, ab occidente Francos, a meridie Burgundzones, a septentrione Thuringos.	Now this country of the Swevians has on the east the Baja-warjos {"Bavarians," i.e., "Inhabitants of Baja" (Bohemia), originally the land of the Celtic Boii}, on the west the Franks {"the Free," "Daring," "Impetuous," "Impudent"}, on the south the Baúrgundjans {"Burgundians" = "The Fortress-dwellers"} and on the north the Þuringos {"Thuringians" (Gothic "~ingos" [spelled "~iggos"] = "Progeny"), i.e., "Race of the Bold," "the Adventurous People"}.
281	
Quibus Swavis tunc juncti aderant etiam Alamanni, ipsique Alpes erectas omnino possidentes, unde nonnulla fluenta Danubium influunt nimio cum sono vergentia.	With the Swevians there were present the Ala-mannans {"All-men," i.e., United Tribes}, their confederates at that time, who themselves completely controlled the high Alps, whence several streams flow into the Danube, pouring in with a great roar.
Huc ergo, taliterque munito loco, rex	Into a place thus fortified King Þiuði-mer led

Thiudimer hiemis tempore Gothorum ductavit exercitum, et tam Swavorum gentem quam etiam Alamannorum, utrasque ad invicem foederatas, devicit, vastavit et paene subegit.	his army in the wintertime and conquered, plundered and almost subdued the race of the Swevians as well as the Ala-mannans, who were mutually banded together.
Inde quoque victor ad proprias sedes, id est Pannonias, revertens, Theodoricum filium suum, quem Constantinopolim obsidem dederat, a Leone Imperatore remissum cum magnis muneribus gratanter excepit.	Thence he returned as victor to his own home in Pannonia and joyfully received his son Þiuða-reik {469/470}, once given as hostage to Constantinople and now sent back by the Emperor Leo with great gifts.
282	
Qui Theodoricus jam adolescentiae annos contingens, expleta pueritia, octavum decimum annum peragens, ascitis certis ex satellitibus patris, ex populo amatores sibi clientesque consociavit - paene sex milia viros; cum quibus, inconscio patre, emenso Danubio, super Babai Sarmatarum regem discurrit, qui tunc de Camundo duce Romanorum victoria potitus superbiae tumore regnabat, eumque superveniens Theodoricus interemit familiamque et censum depraedans ad genitorem suum cum victoria repedavit.	Now Þiuða-reik had reached man's estate, for he was eighteen years of age and his boyhood was ended. So he summoned certain of his father's adherents and took to himself from the people his friends and retainers, --almost six thousand men. With these he crossed the Danube, without his father's knowledge, and launched a strike against Babai, king of the Sarmatians, who had just won a victory over Camundus, a general of the Romans, and was ruling with insolent pride. Þiuða-reik ambushed him and slew him, and taking as booty his slaves and treasure, returned victorious to his father {470/471}.
Singidunum dehinc civitatem, quam ipsi Sarmatae occupaverant, invadens, non Romanis reddidit, sed suae subdidit dicioni.	Next he invaded the city of Singidunum {(modern Belgrade, Yugoslavia)}, which the Sarmatians themselves had seized, and did not return it to the Romans, but reduced it to his own sway.
LVI 283	
Minuentibus deinde hinc inde vicinarum gentium spoliis, coepit et Gothi victus vestitusque deesse et hominibus, quibus dudum bella alimoniam praestitissent, pax coepit esse contraria, omnesque cum magno clamore ad regem Thiudimer accedentes Gothi orant, quacumque parte vellet, tantum ductaret exercitum.	Then as the spoil taken from one and another of the neighboring tribes diminished, the Goths began to lack food and clothing, and peace became distasteful to men for whom war had long furnished the necessities of life. So all the Goths approached their king Þiuði-mer and, with great outcry, begged him to lead forth his army in whatsoever

	direction he might wish.
Qui, accito germano missaque sorte, hortatus est, ut ille in partem Italiae, ubi tunc Glycerius regnabat Imperator, ipse vero sicut fortior ad fortius regnum accederet Orientale: quod et factum est.	He summoned his brother and, after casting lots, bade him go into the country of Italy, where at this time Glycerius ruled as emperor {(of the West, 473)}, saying that he himself, as the stronger, would go up against the stronger empire: the Eastern one. And so it happened.
284	
Et mox Widimer Italiae terras intravit, extremum fati munus reddens, rebus excessit humanis, successorem relinquens Widimer filium suumque synonymum.	But almost as soon as Wiði-mer entered the land of Italy, he paid the last debt of fate and departed from earthly affairs, leaving his son and namesake Wiði-mer to succeed him.
Quem Glycerius Imperator, muneribus datis, de Italia ad Gallias transtulit (quae a diversis circumcirca gentibus premebantur), asserens vicinos ibi Wisigothas, eorum parentes, regnare.	The Emperor Glycerius bestowed gifts upon Wiði-mer and persuaded him to go from Italy to Gaul (which was then being harassed on all sides by various races), saying that their own kinsmen, the Visigoths, there ruled a neighboring kingdom.
Quid multum? Widimer, acceptis muneribus simulque mandatis a Glycerio Imperatore, Gallias tendit - seseque cum parentibus Wisigothis jungens, unum corpus efficiunt, ut dudum fuerant, et sic Gallias Hispaniasque tenentes suo jure defendunt, ut nullus ibi alius praevaleret.	And what more? Wiði-mer accepted the gifts and, obeying the command of the Emperor Glycerius, pressed on to Gaul. Joining with his kinsmen the Visigoths, they again formed one body, as they had been long ago. Thus they held Gaul and Spain by their own right and so defended them that no other race won the mastery there.
285	
Thiudimer autem, frater senior, cum suis transit Savum amnem, Sarmatis militibusque interminans bellum, si aliquis ei obstaret.	But Þiuði-mer, the elder brother, crossed the river Save with his men, threatening the Sarmatians and their soldiers with war if any should resist him.
Quod illi verentes quiescunt, immo nec praevalent ad tantam multitudinem.	From fear of this they kept quiet; moreover they were powerless in the face of so great a host.
Videns Thiudimer undique sibi prospera evenire, Naissum primam urbem invadit Illyrici, filioque suo Theodorico sociatis Astat et Inwilja comitibus, per castrum Herculis transmisit Ulpianam.	Þiuði-mer, seeing good luck everywhere awaiting him, invaded Naissus {modern Nish, Serbia}, the first city of Illyricum. Having joined the Counts A-stað {"the Steadfast"} and In-wilja {"Strong-

	Willed"} to his son Piuđa-reik, he sent them to Ulpiana {modern Lipljan, Serbia} by way of Castrum Herculis {modern Kurvingrad Clisura, Serbia, fourteen miles SW of Nish}.
286	
Qui venientes tam eam quam Stobis mox in deditionem accipiunt, nonnullaque loca Illyrici, inaccessibleia sibi primum, tunc pervia faciunt.	Upon their arrival the town surrendered, as did Stobi {near modern Gradsko} later; and several places of Illyricum, inaccessible to them at first, were thus made easy of approach.
Nam Heracleam et Larissam, civitates Thessaliae, primum praedas ereptas, dehinc ipsas, jure bellico potiuntur.	For they first plundered and then ruled by right of war Heraclea {modern Bitola} and Larissa {still named "Larissa"}, cities of Thessaly.
Thiudimer vero rex, animadvertens tam felicitatem suam quam etiam filii, nec his tantum contentus, egrediens Naissitana urbe, paucis ad custodiam derelictis, ipse Thessalonicam petiit, in qua Hilarianus Patricius a principe directus cum exercitu morabatur.	But Piuđi-mer the king, perceiving his own good fortune and that of his son, was not content with this alone, but set forth from the city of Naissus {= Nish}, leaving only a few men behind as a guard. He himself advanced to Thessalonica {modern Thessaloniki/Salonika}, where Hilarianus the Patrician, appointed by the Emperor, was stationed with his army.
287	
Qui quum videret vallo muniri Thessalonicam nec se eorum conatibus posse resistere, missa legatione ad Thiudimer regem muneribusque oblatis, ab excidione eum urbis retorquet, initoque foedere, Romanus ductor cum Gothis, loca eis jam sponte, quae incolerent, tradidit - id est, Cyrrhus, Pella, Europus, Methone, Pydna, Beroea et aliud quod Dium vocatur.	When Hilarianus beheld Thessalonica surrounded by an entrenchment and saw that he could not resist attack, he sent an embassy to Piuđi-mer the king and by the offer of gifts turned him aside from destroying the city. Then the Roman general entered upon a truce with the Goths and of his own accord handed over to them places they might inhabit, namely Kyrros, Pella {Macedonian capital; now Diokletianoupolis}, Europos, Methone, Pydna {Kitron}, Beroia {Veroia; mentioned in Acts 17,10}, and another which is called Dion. {Note: all were just N and W of the Gulf of Saloniki, modern northern Greece.}

288	
Ubi Gothi cum rege suo, armis depositis, composita pace, quiescunt.	So the Goths and their king laid aside their arms, consented to peace and became quiet.
Nec diu post haec et rex Thiudimer in civitate Cyrrho, fatali aegritudine occupatus, vocatis Gothis, Theodoricum filium regni sui designat heredem et ipse mox rebus humanis excessit.	Soon after these events, King Þiuði-mer was seized with a mortal illness in the city of Kyrros. He called the Goths to himself, appointed Þiuða-reik his son as heir of his kingdom and presently departed this life {474}.
LVII 289	
Theodoricum vero gentis suae regem audiens ordinatum, Imperator Zeno grate suscepit, eique evocatoria destinata, ad se in urbem venire praecepit; dignoque suscipiens honore, inter procures sui palatii collocavit.	When the Emperor Zeno {of the East, 474-491} heard that Þiuða-reik had been appointed king over his own people, he received the news with pleasure and, having sent him a letter of invitation, bade him come visit him in the city. Receiving Þiuða-reik with the proper honors, he placed him among the nobles of his palace.
Et post aliquod tempus, ad ampliandum honorem ejus in armis sibi eum filium adoptavit, de suisque stipendiis triumphum in urbe donavit, factusque Consul Ordinarius - quod summum bonum primumque in mundo decus edicitur; nec tantum hoc, sed etiam et equestrem statuam ad famam tanti viri ante regiam palatii collocavit.	After some time Zeno increased his dignity by adopting him as his son-at-arms {(476)} and gave him a triumph in the city at his expense. Þiuða-reik was made Consul Ordinary {(484)} also, which is well known to be the supreme good and highest honor in the world. Nor was this all, for Zeno set up in front of the palace courtyard an equestrian statue to the glory of this great man.
290	
Inter haec ergo Theodoricus, Zenonis imperio foedere sociatus, dum ipse in urbe omnibus bonis frueretur, gentemque suam in Illyrico, ut diximus, residentem non omnino idoneam aut copiis abundantem audiret, elegit potius, solito more gentis suae, labore quaerere victum, quam ipse otiose frui regni Romani bonis et gentem suam mediocriter victitare; secumque deliberans ad principem ait: "Quamvis nihil deest nobis imperio Vestro	Now while Þiuða-reik was in alliance by treaty with the Empire of Zeno and was himself enjoying every comfort in the city, he heard that his tribe, dwelling as we have said in Illyricum, was not altogether satisfied or content. So he chose rather to seek a living by his own exertions, after the manner customary to his race, rather than to enjoy the advantages of the Roman Empire in luxurious ease while his tribe lived in want. After pondering these matters, he said to the

<p>famulantibus, tamen, si dignum ducit Pietas Vestra, desiderium mei cordis libenter exaudiat."</p>	<p>Emperor: "Though I lack nothing in serving your Empire, yet if Your Piety deem it worthy, be pleased to hear the desire of my heart."</p>
<p>291</p>	
<p>Quumque ei, ut solebat, familiariter facultas fuisset loquendi concessa: "Hesperia," inquit, "plaga, quae dudum decessorum prodecessorumque Vestrorum regimine gubernata est, et urbs illa caput orbis et domina, quare nunc sub regis Thorcilingorum Rugorumque tyrannide fluctuatur? Dirige me cum gente mea, si praecipis, ut et hic expensarum pondere careas et ibi, si, adjutus a domino, vicero, fama Vestrae Pietatis irradiet. Expedit namque, ut ego, qui sum servus Vester et filius, si vicero, Vobis donantibus regnum illud possideam: haut ille, quem non nostis, tyrannico iugo senatum Vestrum partemque rei publicae captivitatis servitio premat. Ego enim si vicero, Vestro dono Vestroque munere possidebo; si victus fuero, Vestra Pietas nihil amittit, immo, ut diximus, lucratur expensas."</p>	<p>And when as usual he had been granted permission to speak freely, he said: "The western country, long ago governed by the rule of Your ancestors and predecessors, and that city which was the head and mistress of the world, - why does it now totter under the tyranny of the Þorcilings {= Þwaírhei-l-ingos? (Gothic "~ingos" [spelled "~iggos"] = "Progeny"), Race of Wrath} and Rugians? Send me there with my race. Thus if You but say the word, You may be freed from the burden of expense here, and, if by the Lord's help I conquer, the fame of Your Piety shall shine forth there. For it is better that I, Your servant and Your son, should rule that kingdom, receiving it as a gift from You if I conquer, than that one whom You do not recognize should oppress Your Senate with his tyrannical yoke and a part of the republic with slavery. For if I prevail, I shall retain it as Your grant and gift; if I am conquered, Your Piety will lose nothing - nay, as I have said, it will save the expense I now entail."</p>
<p>292</p>	
<p>Quo audito, quamvis aegre ferret Imperator discessum ejus, nolens tamen eum contristare, annuit quae poscebat, magnisque ditatum muneribus dimisit a se, Senatum Populumque ei commendans</p>	<p>Although the Emperor was grieved that he should go, yet when he heard this he granted what Þiuða-reik asked, for he was unwilling to cause him sorrow. He sent him forth enriched by great gifts and commended to</p>

Romanum.	his charge the Senate and the Roman People.
Igitur egressus urbe regia, Theodoricus, et ad suos revertens, omnem gentem Gothorum, qui tamen ei prae buerunt consensum, Hesperiam tendit; rectoque itinere per Sirmium ascendit vicina Pannoniae, indeque Venetiarum fines ingressus, ad Pontem Sontii nuncupatum castra metatus est.	Therefore Þiuða-reik departed from the royal city {488} and returned to his own people. He directed the whole tribe of the Goths - those, that is, who gave him their consent - toward the West. He went in straight march through Sirmium {Sremska Mitrovica} to the places bordering on Pannonia and, advancing into the territory of Venetia as far as the so-called Isonzo Bridge {over the Aesontius (Isonzo) river (between modern Italy and Slovenia)}, encamped there.
293	
Quumque ibi ad reficienda corpora hominum jumentorumque aliquanto tempore resedisset, Odoacer armatum contra eum direxit exercitum. Quem ille, ad campos Veronenses occurrens, magna strage delevit; castrisque solutis, fines Italiae cum potiore audacia intrat, transactoque Pado amne, ad Ravennam regiam urbem castra componit, tertio fere milliaro ab urbe, loco, qui appellatur Pineta.	When he had halted there for some time to rest the bodies of his men and pack-animals, Auða-wakr sent an armed force against him, which he met on the plains of Verona and destroyed with great slaughter {August 28, 489}. Then he broke camp and advanced through Italy with greater boldness. Crossing the river Po, he pitched camp near the royal city of Ravenna, about the third milestone from the city in the place called Pineta {a well-known pine forest near Ravenna}.
Quod cernens, Odoacer intus se in urbe communit; indeque surreptive noctu frequenter cum suis egrediens, Gothorum exercitum inquietat, et hoc non semel nec iterum, sed frequenter; et paene molitur toto triennio.	When Auða-wakr saw this, he fortified himself within the city. From here he frequently harassed the army of the Goths at night, sallying forth stealthily with his men, and this not once or twice, but often; and thus he struggled for almost three whole years.
294	
Sed frustra laborat, quia cuncta Italia dominum jam dicebat Theodoricum et illius ad nutum res illa publica obsecundabat.	But he labored in vain, for all Italy at last called Þiuða-reik its lord and the Empire obeyed his nod.
Tantum ille solus cum paucis satellitibus et Romanis, qui aderant, et fame et bello cotidie intra Ravennam laborabat.	But Auða-wakr, with his few adherents and the Romans who were present, suffered daily from war and famine in Ravenna.

Quod dum nihil proficeret, missa legatione veniam supplicat.	Since all the while he accomplished nothing, he sent an embassy and begged for mercy {February 25, 493}.
295	
Cui et primum concedens Theodoricus postmodum ab hac luce privavit; tertioque, ut diximus, anno ingressus sui in Italiam Zenonisque Imperatoris consultu, privatum habitum suaeque gentis vestitum seponens, insigne regii amictus, quasi jam Gothorum Romanorumque regnator, assumit, missaque legatione ad Lodowic Francorum regem, filiam ejus Audefledam sibi in matrimonium petit.	Þiuða-reik first granted it and afterwards deprived him of his life {March 15, 493}. It was in the third year after his entrance into Italy, as we have said, that Þiuða-reik, by advice of the Emperor Zeno, laid aside the garb of a private citizen and the dress of his race and donned the regalia of investiture, as he had now become the ruler over both Goths and Romans. He sent an embassy to Hluða-weih {"Loud-battle," "Din (of) combat"}, king of the Franks, and asked for his daughter {actually his sister} Auða-fleð {"Blessed-beauty"} in marriage.
296	
Quam ille grate libenterque concessit, suosque filios Cheldebertum et Thiudebertum credens, hac societate cum gente Gothorum inito foedere, sociari.	Hluða-weih freely and gladly gave her, believing that by this alliance a league would be formed and that his sons Hildi-bairht and Þiuði-bairht {the latter actually his grandson through another of his sons, Þiuða-reik}, would be allied with the race of the Goths.
Sed non adeo ad pacis concordiam profuit ista conjunctio, quia saepenumero propter Gallorum terras graviter inter se decertati sunt; nunquamque Gothus Francis cessit, dum viveret Theodoricus.	But that union was of no avail for peace and harmony, for they fought fiercely with each other again and again for the lands of the Gauls; but never did the Goths yield to the Franks while Þiuða-reik lived.
<p style="text-align: center;">LVIII</p> <p style="text-align: center;">297</p>	
Antequam ergo de Audefleda subolem haberet, naturales ex concubina, quas genuerat adhuc in Moesia, filias habuit, unam nomine Thiudigoto et aliam Ostrogoto.	Now before he had a child from Auða-fleð, Þiuða-reik had natural children of a concubine, daughters begotten in Moesia, one named Þiuði-guto {"People-Goth," i.e., "of Gothic Stock"} and another Austra-guto {"Shining Goth"}.
Quas mox in Italiam venit, regibus vicinis	Soon after he came to Italy, he gave them in

in conjugio copulavit, id est unam Alarico Wisigotharum et aliam Sigismundo Burgundionum.	marriage to neighboring kings, one to Ala-reik {II; 485-507}, king of the Visigoths, and the other to Sigis-mund {"Victorious protection"}, king of the Burgundians {516-523}.
298	
De Alarico ergo natus est Amalaricus.	Now Ala-reik's son was Amala-reik.
Quem avus Theodoricus in annis puerilibus, utroque parente orbatum, dum fovet atque tuetur, comperit Eutharicum, Weterici filium, Beretmodi et Thorismodi nepotem, Amalorum de stirpe descendentem, in Hispania degere, juvenili aetate, prudentia et virtute, corporisque integritate pollentem.	While his grandfather Þiuða-reik cared for and protected him - for he had lost both parents in the years of childhood - he found that Iupa-reik, the son of Wiði-reik, grandson of Bairi-moð and great grandson of Þáuris-moð, and a descendant of the clan of the Amals, was living in Spain, a young man strong in wisdom and valor and health of body.
Ad se eum facit venire, eique Amalaswenþam filiam suam in matrimonio jungit.	Þiuða-reik sent for him and gave him his daughter Amala-swinþo in marriage.
299	
Et ut in plenum suam progeniem dilataret, Amalafridam germanam suam (matrem Theodahadi, qui postea rex fuit) in Africam regi Wandalorum conjugem dirigit Thrasamundo; filiamque ejus, neptem suam Amalabergam, Thuringorum regi consociat Erminefredo.	And that he might extend his family as much as possible, he sent his sister Amala-fríþo {"Amal peace"} (the mother of Þiuða-haþ {"Race struggle," "Nation fight"}, who was afterwards king) to Africa as wife of Þrasa-mund {"Roaring protection," "Clamorous guard"}, king of the Vandals; and her daughter Amala-baírgo {"Amal preservation"}, who was his own niece, he united with Aírmina-fríþ {"Mighty peace"}, king of the Þuringos {"Thuringians" (Gothic "~ingos" [spelled "~iggos"] = "Progeny"), i.e., "Race of the Bold," "the Adventurous People"}.
300	
Pitziam quoque suum comitem et inter primos electum ad obtinendam Sirmiensem dirigit civitatem.	Now he sent his Count Pitzia, chosen from among the chief men of his kingdom, to take the city of Sirmium {Sremska Mitrovica}.

Quam ille, expulso rege ejus Thrasarico (filio Trafstilae), retenta ejus matre, obtinuit.	He got possession of it by driving out its king Þrasa-reik {"Thundering ruler," "Roaring prince"} (son of Þrafstila {"Consoler," "Comforter"}), and holding his mother captive.
Inde contra Sabinianum, Illyricum Magistrum Militum, qui tunc cum Mundone paraverat conflictum, ad civitatem cognomine Margo-planum (quae inter Danubium Margumque flumina adjacebat), cum duobus milibus peditum, equitibus quingentis, in Mundonis solacia veniens, Illyricianum exercitum demolitus est.	Thence he came with two thousand infantry and five hundred horsemen to aid Mund {"Guardarm," "Protection"; Hun with a Gothic name} against Sabinian, Master of the Soldiery of Illyricum, who at that time had made ready to fight with Mund in the jurisdiction named Margoplanum {Greek, "Margus-meanders," near the confluence of the Margus river with the Danube in Serbia}, which lies between the Danube and Margus {modern Morava} rivers, and destroyed the army of Illyricum.
301	
Nam hic Mundo de Attilana quondam origine descendens, Gepidarum gentem fugiens, ultra Danubium in incultis locis sine ullis terrae cultoribus divagatus et, plerisque abactoribus scamarisque et latronibus undecunque collectis, turrem quae Herta dicitur super Danubii ripam positam occupans, ibique agresti ritu, praedasque innectens vicinis, regem se suis grassatoribus fecerat.	For this Mundo, who traced his descent from the Attilani of old, had fled from the tribe of the Gibiðos and was roaming beyond the Danube in waste places where no man tilled the soil. He had gathered around him many cattle-rustlers and bandits and robbers from all sides and had seized a tower called Herta, situated on the bank of the Danube. There in barbaric fashion he engineered raids on his neighbors and made himself king over his vagabonds.
Hunc ergo, paene desperatum et jam de traditione sua deliberantem, Pitzia subveniens e manibus Sabiniani eripuit, suoque regi Theodorico cum gratiarum actione fecit subjectum.	Now Pitzia came upon him when he was nearly reduced to desperation and was already thinking of surrender. So he rescued him from the hands of Sabinian and made him a grateful subject of his king Þiuða-reik.
302	
Non minus tropaeum de Francis per Ibbam, suum comitem, in Galliis acquisivit, plus triginta milibus Francorum in proelio caesis.	Þiuða-reik won an equally great victory over the Franks through his Count Ibbā {probably a contraction of In-baírh "Intensely bright," "Very luminous"} in Gaul, when more than thirty

	thousand Franks were slain in battle.
Nam et Thiudem suum armigerum, post mortem Alarici generi, tutorem (in Hispaniae regno) Amalarici nepotis constituit.	Moreover, after the death {507} of his son-in-law Ala-reik {II}, Þiuḁa-reik appointed Þiuḁeis {"Ethnic stock," "(a) People"; short for a name beginning with Þiuḁ-}, his armor bearer, as guardian of his grandson Amala-reik {regent, 507-531} in Spain.
Qui Amalaricus in ipsa adolescentia, Francorum fraudibus irretitus, regnum cum vita amisit.	But Amala-reik was ensnared by the plots of the Franks in early youth and lost his life together with his kingdom {531}.
Post quem, Thiudis tutor idem regnum ipse invadens, Francorum insidiosam calumniam de Hispaniis pepulit, et usque dum viveret, Wisigothas continuit.	After him, his guardian Þiuḁeis, taking over the same kingdom himself, drove the treacherous deceit of the Franks from Spain and, as long as he lived, kept the Visigoths united {531-548}.
303	
Post quem Thiudigisclus regnum adeptus, non diu regnans, defecit, occisus a suis.	After him Þiuḁi-gisl {"People-arrowshaft"} obtained the kingdom {548} and, ruling but a short time, met his death at the hands of his own followers.
Cui succedens, hactenus Agil continet regnum.	He was succeeded {549} by Agil {"Trouble," "Pain"}, who holds the kingdom to the present day {551}.
Contra quem Athanagildus insurgens Romani regni concitat vires, ubi et Liberius Patricius cum exercitu destinatur.	Aþana-gild {"Noble value," "Aristocratic worth"} has rebelled against him {550} and is even now {551} provoking the might of the Roman Empire. So Liberius the Patrician is on the way with an army to oppose him. {[But Liberius actually joined Aþana-gild and together they defeated Agil in 552. In 555 Agil was killed by his own men, who then joined Aþana-gild and fought against Liberius. Aþana-gild died in 568.]}
Nec fuit in parte occidua gens, quae Theodorico, dum adviveret, aut amicitia aut subjectione non deserviret.	Now there was not a tribe in the west that did not serve Þiuḁa-reik while he lived, either in friendship or by conquest.

Sed postquam ad senium pervenisset et se in brevi ab hac luce egressurum cognosceret, convocans Gothos comites gentisque suae primates, Athalaricum infantulum adhuc vix decennem, filium filiae suae Amalaswenthae, qui Eutharico patre orbatus erat, regem constituit, eisque in mandatis ac si testamentali voce denuntians, ut regem colerent, senatum populumque Romanum amarent, Principemque Orientalem placatum semper propitiumque haberent post Deum.

When he had reached old age and knew that he should soon depart this life, he called together the Gothic counts and chieftains of his race {525} and appointed Apala-reik as king. He was a boy scarce ten years old, the son of his daughter Amala-swinþo, and he had lost his father Iuþa-reik. As though uttering his last will and testament, Þiuða-reik adjured and commanded them to honor their king, to love the Senate and Roman People and to make sure of the peace and good will of the Emperor of the East, as next after God.

Quod praeceptum quamdiu Athalaricus rex ejusque mater adviverent, in omnibus custodientes paene per octo annos in pace regnarunt; quamvis Francis de regno puerili sperantibus, immo in contemptu habentibus bellaque parare molientibus, quod pater et avus Galliarum occupassent eis concessit.

They kept this command fully so long as Apala-reik their king and his mother lived, and ruled in peace for almost eight years. But since, however much the Franks may have had hopes about the rule of the boy, they nonetheless held him in contempt and were plotting war, he gave back to them those parts of Gaul which his father and grandfather had seized.

Cetera in pace et tranquillitate possessa.

He possessed all the rest in peace and quiet.

Dum ergo ad spem juventutis Athalaricus accederet, tam suam adulescentiam quam matris viduitatem Orientis Principi commendavit, sed in brevi infelicissimus immatura morte praeventus, rebus humanis excessit.

Therefore when Apala-reik was approaching the age of manhood, he entrusted to the Emperor of the East both his own youth and his mother's widowhood. But in a short time the ill-fated boy was carried off by an untimely death and departed from earthly affairs.

Tum mater, ne pro sexus sui fragilitate a Gothis sperneretur, secum deliberans, Theodahadum consobrinum suum germanitatis gratia arcessitum a Tuscia, ubi privatam vitam degens in laribus propriis erat, in regno locavit.

His mother feared she might be despised by the Goths on account of the weakness of her sex. So after much thought she decided, for the sake of kinship, to summon her cousin Þiuða-haþ from Tuscany {534}, where he led a retired life at home, and thus she established him on the throne.

Qui, immemor consanguinitatis, post aliquantum tempus a palatio Ravennati abstractam in insulam lacus Bolsiniensis eam exilio relegavit ubi, paucissimos dies in tristitia degens, ab ejus satellitibus in balneo strangulata est.	But he was heedless of their blood relationship and, after a little time, had her taken from the palace at Ravenna to an island of the Bolsinian lake {(modern Lake Bolsena, in southern Tuscany)} where he kept her in exile. After spending a very few days there in sorrow, she was strangled in the bath by his hirelings.
LX 307	
Quod quum Justinianus Imperator Orientalis audisset, quasi susceptorum suorum mors ad suam injuriam redundaret sic est commotus.	When Justinian, the Emperor of the East {527-565}, heard this, he was aroused as if the death of his wards had redounded to his own personal injury.
Eodem namque tempore, de Africa Wandalicum quum per fidelissimum suum Patricium Belisarium reportasset triumphum, nec mora, in ipso tempore, madentibus adhuc armis cruore Wandalico, contra Gothos per eundem ducem movit procinctum.	Now at that time he had won a triumph over the Vandals in Africa {534} through his most faithful Patrician Belisarius. Without delay he sent his army under this leader against the Goths {535}, his weapons still dripping with the blood of the Vandals.
308	
Qui dux providentissimus haud secus arbitratus Gothorum subjicere populum, nisi prius nutricem eorum occupasset Siciliam.	This sagacious general believed he could not overcome the Gothic nation, unless he first seized Sicily, their nursing-mother.
Quod et factum est.	Accordingly he did so.
Trinacriamque ingressus, mox Gothi, qui Syracusanum oppidum insidebant, videntes se nihil praevalere, cum suo duce Sinderith ultro se Belisario dediderunt.	As soon as he entered Trinacria, the Goths, who were holding the town of Syracuse, saw that they were not succeeding and surrendered of their own accord to Belisarius, with their leader Sinpa-rep {"Marching plan," "Journey plan"}.
Quumque ergo Romanus ductor Siciliam invasisset, Theodahadus, comperiens, Evermud generum suum cum exercitu ad fretum quod inter Campaniam Siciliamque interjacet, et de Tyrrheni maris sinu vastissimo ubi Adriaticus aestus evolvitur, custodiendum direxit.	When the Roman general invaded Sicily, Piuða-haþ, learning of this, sent Ibr-moð {"Boar-mood"}, his son-in-law, with an army to guard the strait which lies between Campania and Sicily and where the churning Adriatic swirls out from a vast bay of the Tyrrhenian Sea.

309	
Ubi quum Evermud accessisset Regium oppidum, castra composuit.	When Ibr-moð arrived, he pitched his camp by the town of Regium {modern Reggio di Calabria}.
Nec mora deterioratam causam cernens suorum, ad partes victoris, cum paucis et fidelissimis famulis consciis, movit, ultroque se Belisarii pedibus advolvens, Romani regni optat servire principibus.	He soon saw that his side was the weaker. With a few faithful followers who were in the know, he switched over {536} to the side of the victor and, of his own accord casting himself at the feet of Belisarius, he decided to serve the rulers of the Roman Empire.
Quod Gothorum exercitus sentiens, suspectum Theodahadum clamat regno pellendum et sibi ductorem suum Witiges, qui armiger ejus fuerat, in regem levandum.	When the army of the Goths found this out, they held Þiuða-haþ suspect and clamored for his expulsion from the throne and for the appointment as king of their commander Weiti-gais {"Punishing spear"}, who had been his armor bearer.
310	
Quod et factum est; et mox in campis Barbaricis Witiges in regnum levatus Romam ingreditur, praemissisque Ravennam fidelissimis sibi viris Theodahadi necem mandat.	This was done; and presently Weiti-gais was raised to the office of king on the Barbarian Plains {= probably the Pomptine Marshes between Rome and Terracina}. He entered Rome and sent on ahead to Ravenna the men most faithful to him with orders to kill Þiuða-haþ.
Qui venientes imperata sibi perficiunt et, occiso Theodahado, regem qui a rege missus adveniebat (et adhuc in campis Barbaricis erat Witigis) populis nuntiat.	They came and executed his command. After Þiuða-haþ was slain, a messenger from the king arrived (for he was still on the Barbarian Plains) to proclaim Weiti-gais to the people.
311	
Inter haec Romanus exercitus, emenso freto Campaniam accedens, subversaue Neapoli Romam ingreditur; unde ante paucos dies rex Witigis egressus, Ravennam profectus, Matheswentham, filiam Amalaswensthae, Theodorici quondam regis neptem, sibi in matrimonio sociarat.	Meanwhile the Roman army crossed the strait and moved toward Campania. After having destroyed Naples they marched into Rome. Now a few days before they arrived, King Weiti-gais had left from there, proceeded to Ravenna and married Mapu-swinþo {"Good strength"}, the daughter of Amala-swinþo {"Amal strength"} and granddaughter of Þiuða-reik, the former king.

Quumque his novis nuptiis delectatus aulam regiam fovit Ravennae, Roma egressus imperialis exercitus munita utriusque Tusciae loca invadit.	While he was celebrating his new marriage and holding court at Ravenna, the imperial army advanced from Rome and attacked the strongholds in both parts of Tuscany.
Quod cernens per nuntios Witiges, cum Hunila, duce Gothorum, manum armis consertam mittit Perusiam.	When Weiti-gais learned of this through messengers, he sent heavily armed troops {536} under Hunila {"Powerful one"}, a leader of the Goths, to Perusia {modern Perugia in the Appennine mountains, halfway between Rome and Ravenna}.
312	
Ubi dum Magnum Comitem cum parvo exercitu residentem obsessione longa evellere cupiunt, superveniente Romano exercitu ipsi evulsi et omnino exstincti sunt.	While they were endeavoring by a long blockade to dislodge Count Magnus, who was holding the place with a small force, the Roman army came upon them, and they themselves were driven away and utterly exterminated.
Quod audiens, Witiges ut leo furibundus omnem Gothorum exercitum congregat, Ravennaque egressus Romanas arces obsidione longa fatigat.	When Weiti-gais heard the news, he raged like a lion and assembled the entire Gothic army. He advanced from Ravenna and harassed the walls of Rome with a long siege.
Sed, frustrata ejus audacia, post quattuordecim menses ab obsidione Romanae urbis aufugit et se ad Ariminensem oppressionem praeparat.	But with his boldness frustrated after fourteen months, he abandoned the siege of the city of Rome {538} and prepared to seize Ariminum {modern Rimini}.
313	
Unde pari tenore frustratus fugatusque Ravennam se recepit: ubi obsessus, nec mora, ultro se ad partes dedit victoris cum Matheswentha jugali regiisque opibus.	Here he was baffled in like manner and put to flight; and so he retreated to Ravenna. When besieged there, he quickly and willingly surrendered himself to the victorious side, together with his wife Mapu-swinþo and the royal treasures {540}.
Et sic famosum regnum fortissimamque gentem diuque regnantem tandem paene duomillensimo et tricesimo anno, victor gentium diversarum, Justinianus Imperator, per fidelissimum consulem vicit Belisarium, et perductum Witiges Constantinopolim Patricii honore donavit.	And thus a famous kingdom and most valiant race, which had long held sway, was at last overcome in almost its two thousand and thirtieth year by that conqueror of many nations, the Emperor Justinian, through his most faithful consul Belisarius. He gave Weiti-gais the title of Patrician and took him

Ubi plus biennio demoratus Imperatorisque in affectu conjunctus, rebus excessit humanis.	to Constantinople, where he dwelt for more than two years, bound by ties of affection to the Emperor, and then departed this life.
314	
Matheswentham vero jugalem ejus fratruei suo, Germano Patricio, conjunxit Imperator.	But his wife Maþu-swinþo was bestowed by the Emperor upon the Patrician Germanus, his brother's son.
De quibus post humatum patris Germani natus est filius item Germanus.	And of them was born a son (also called Germanus) after the burial of his father Germanus {550}.
In quo, conjunctum Aniciorum genus cum Amala stirpe spem adhuc utriusque generis, Domino praestante, promittit.	This union of the race of the Anicii {an ancient Italian senatorial clan, of which Germanus' mother may have been a member} with the stock of the Amals gives hopeful promise, the Lord granting, to both peoples.
(Conclusion)	
315	
Haec hucusque Getarum origo ac Amalorum nobilitas et virorum fortium facta.	Thus is the story, up to our time, of the origin of the Goths, the renown of the Amals, and the deeds of brave men.
Haec laudanda progenies laudabiliori principi cessit et fortiori duci manus dedit, cujus fama nullis saeculis nullisque silebitur aetatibus, sed victor ac triumphator Justinianus Imperator et consul Belisarius Wandalici Africani Geticique dicentur.	This glorious race yielded to an even more glorious prince and surrendered to a more valiant leader, whose fame shall be silenced by no ages or cycles of years; for the victorious and triumphant Emperor Justinian and his consul Belisarius shall be named and known as Vandalicus, Africanus and Geticus.
316	
Haec qui legis, scito me majorum secutum scripta et ex eorum latissimis pratis paucos flores legisse, unde inquirenti pro capto ingenii mei coronam contexam.	O reader, know that I have followed the writings of my predecessors, and have culled a few flowers from their broad meadows with which to weave, to the best of my ability, a garland for him who cares to know these things.
Nec me quis in favorem gentis praedictae, quasi ex ipsa trahentem originem, aliqua addidisse credat quam quae legi et comperi; nec tamen cuncta, quae de ipsis	Let no one believe that to the advantage of the race of which I have spoken - though indeed I trace my own descent from it - I have added anything besides what I have

scribuntur aut referuntur, complexus sum, nec tantum ad eorum laudem quantum ad laudem ejus qui vicit exponens.	read or learned by inquiry. And even so I have not included all that is written or told about them, my exposition being not so much for their praise as for the praise of him who conquered them.
Explicit (Added by later copyists)	